

A

0
0
0
6
3
6
6
3
9
3
1



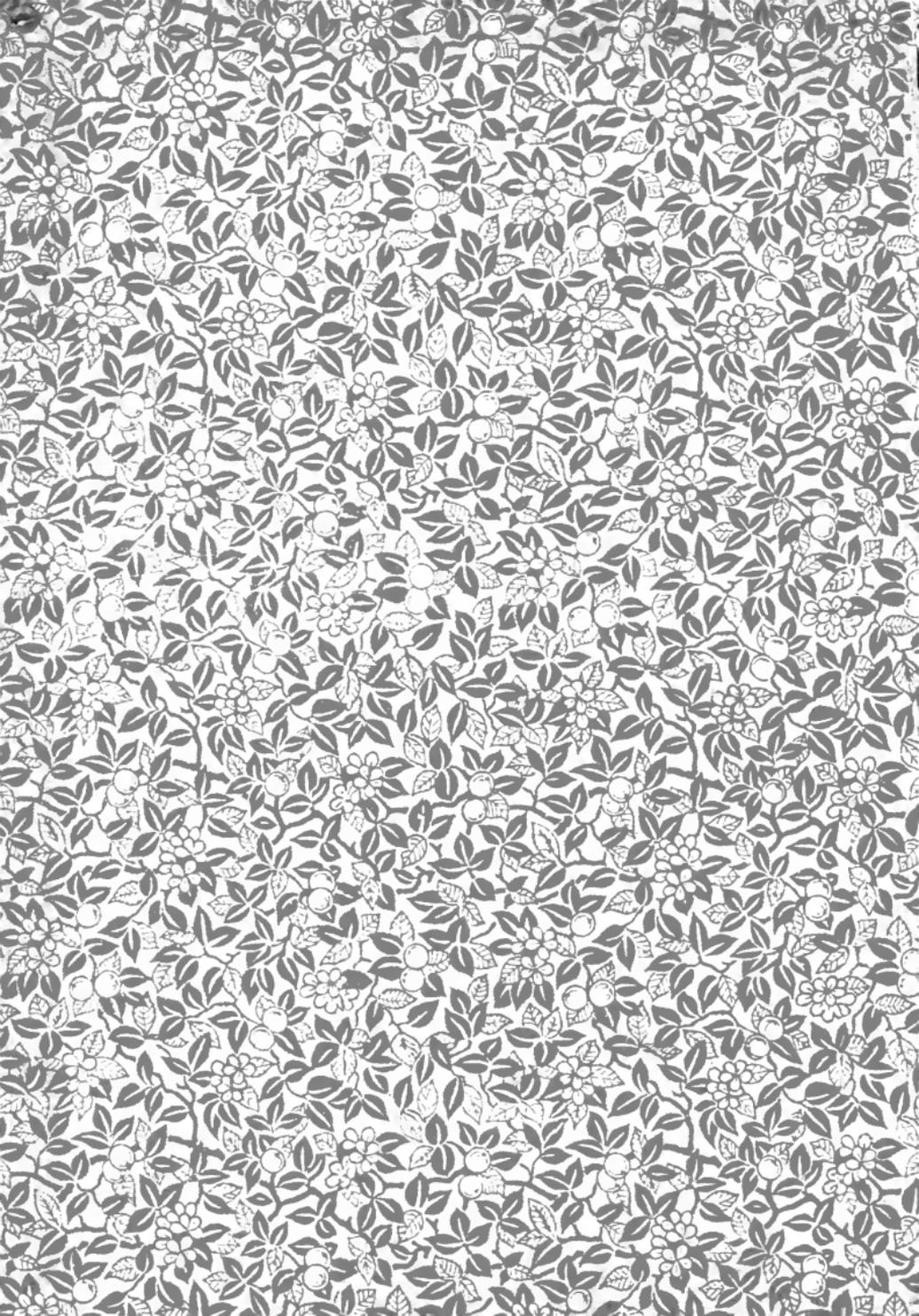
THE TEACHERS

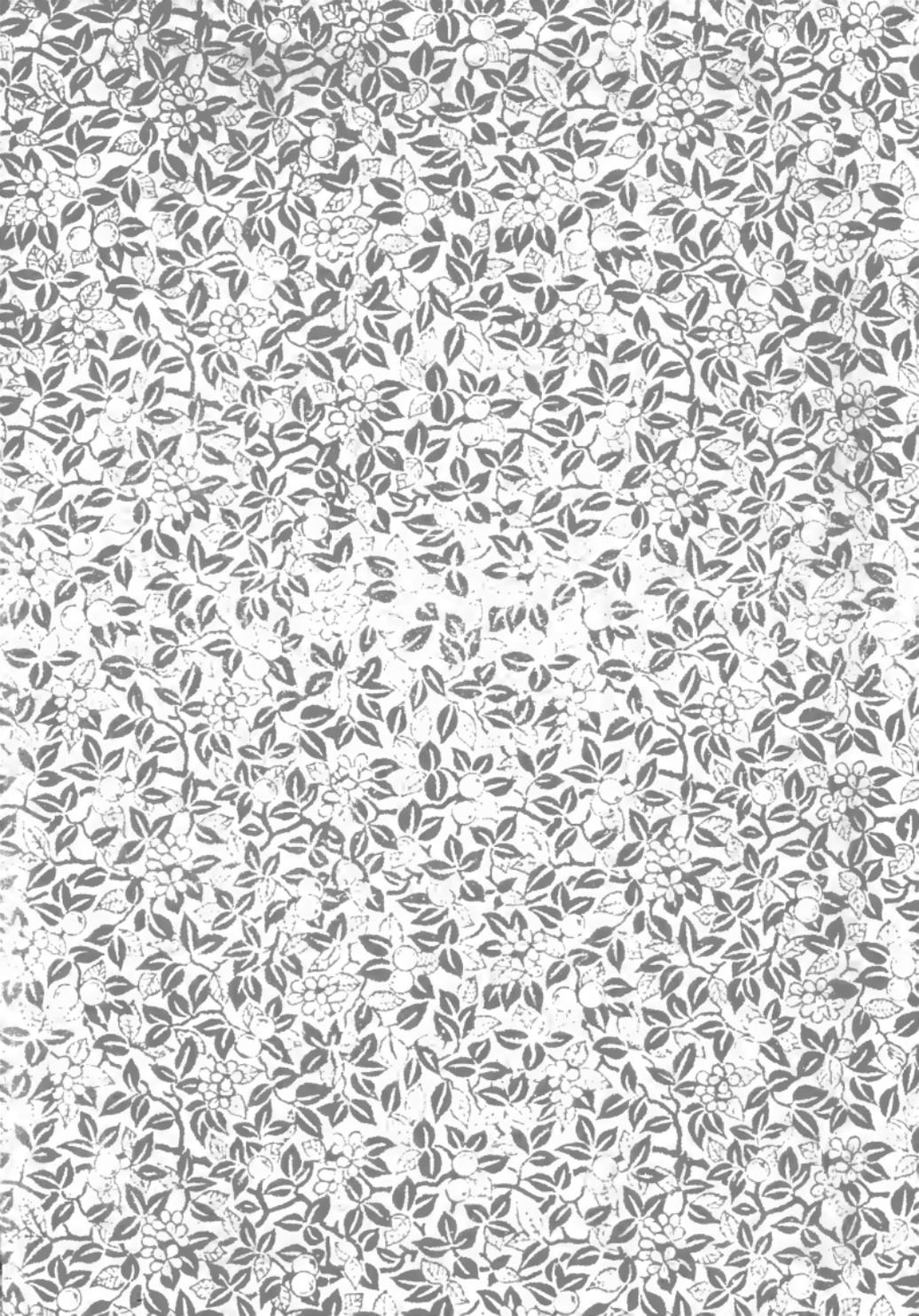
HAND-BOOK OF STENOGRAPHY

BY MISS BALCHIN.



WILEY, PUBLISHERS
NEW YORK
1880





9158

2.51

| 10

00

THE TEACHER'S
HAND-BOOK OF SLÖJD

New Manual Training Publications.

RAFIA WORK.

A course of practical work in Winding, Weaving, Plaiting and Sewing this new material : forming a valuable addition to the list of educative occupations for schools. With 60 beautiful Illustrations. By C. M. SWANNELL. F^{cap} 4to, cloth, 2s. net (Postage 3d.).

PAPER MODELLING.

A combination of Paper Folding, Paper Cutting and Pasting, and Ruler Drawing, forming an introduction to Cardboard Modelling. Containing over 100 carefully drawn Diagrams, printed in monotyp, in addition to the Illustrations of the Completed Models in black and white. By C. M. SWANNELL. Oblong 4to, price 2s. 6d. net (Postage 3d.).

CARDBOARD MODELLING.

A series of 32 Models arranged for use in Elementary and Secondary Schools, Technical Classes, etc., and satisfying the requirements for the Advanced Teacher's Certificate of the Educational Handwork Union. By ALBERT SUTCLIFFE, Organiser of Educational Handwork to the Glamorganshire County Council. New Edition. Imperial 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d. *Prospectus free.*

THE BOOLE CURVE-SEWING OCCUPATION.

A Series of seven Packets of Designs, each containing 12 Cards, 7 by 7 inches, with Directions. By MARY EVEREST BOOLE. 8d. per packet net.

TEACHER'S HANDBOOK to above. With four Coloured Plates and numerous Illustrations. By EDITH L. SOMERVELL. F^{cap} 8vo, cloth, 2s. 6d. net (Postage 3d.). *Prospectus free.*

LEAF FOLDING: A New Nature-Study Occupation.

For Infants' Schools, Kindergartens, and Junior Departments. By Mrs. BEVERLEY USSHER. With a Model Lesson on the Hart's Tongue Fern, by Miss FRYER, Kindergarten Mistress, Shrewsbury High School. In packet containing a series of 12 Designs with descriptive notes and full instructions, 8d. ; in box containing above set, also set of models on coloured paper, cut out and made up, 48 sheets of coloured papers for stencilling, cutting out and making up, with pair of scissors and pins. 2s. 6d. net. *Prospectus free.*

*List of Manual Training, Drawing, or Brushwork Publications
free on application.*

LONDON: GEORGE PHILIP & SON, LTD.

THE TEACHER'S
HAND-BOOK OF SLÖJD

AS PRACTISED AND TAUGHT AT NÄÄS

CONTAINING EXPLANATIONS AND DETAILS OF
EACH EXERCISE.

WITH PRACTICAL DIRECTIONS FOR MAKING THE MODELS.

By OTTO SALOMON,
Director of the Nääs Seminarium.

ASSISTED BY CARL NORDENDAHL AND ALFRED JOHANSSON.

TRANSLATED AND ADAPTED FOR ENGLISH TEACHERS

By MARY R. WALKER,
St. George's Training College, Edinburgh.

AND WILLIAM NELSON,
Superintendent of Manual Instruction, Manchester.

THIRD EDITION.

WITH OVER 130 ILLUSTRATIONS AND PLATES.

SILVER, BURDETT & CO.,
PUBLISHERS,
BOSTON, NEW YORK, CHICAGO.

1907.

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, LTD., PRINTERS, LONDON AND LIVERPOOL, ENGLAND.

117



PREFACE TO THE SWEDISH EDITION.

A DESIRE has for some time been expressed in various quarters for a Hand-Book of Slöjd, written from the *educational* point of view. There have been many indications, especially in connection with Slöjd carpentry, that teachers are not well enough acquainted with the tools employed to select and manage them properly; and a degree of uncertainty seems to prevail regarding the right method of executing the exercises. Now, it is true that no one can acquire this knowledge from *books*; the way to acquire it is by practical, personal experience. Yet, to retain this experience, and apply it, is partially a matter of memory, and, therefore, systematically arranged directions are capable of rendering aid which is not to be despised. A hand-book like the present does not, and could not, supersede personal experience at the bench, or render a course of instruction unnecessary. Its sole object is to supplement and complete the notes which every conscientious student takes during such a course. Its aim is, therefore, chiefly to strengthen and confirm knowledge already acquired; but, though it is thus limited in scope, and, on this account, perhaps to be regarded as in some respects incomplete, the writers venture to express the hope that it will be welcomed by many teachers.

Books are, perhaps, more frequently published before their time than after it; and although there have been numerous opportunities for observation in the province of Educational Slöjd during the last eighteen years (the Slöjd Institution at Nääs having begun operations in 1872), the writers are nevertheless uncertain whether the time has really yet come for the publication of definite directions; or, at least, whether their knowledge of the subject is yet complete enough to justify their appearance in print. But, if they have been premature, the sole reason is to be found in their desire to satisfy a want, which becomes every year more pressing.

The views expressed in the book are, for obvious reasons, in full accordance with the system of instruction followed at Nääs. They are the outcome of careful observations, and of experiments tested by practice. Yet, even if these views should be confirmed by many teachers, the writers, knowing that opinions are divided in the matter of instruction in Slöjd, as in most other questions, are fully prepared for adverse criticism. Whether this criticism be justified or not, of one thing they are certain, and that is, that in all honesty of purpose and strength of conviction

they have striven to fulfil a far from easy task. They trust that others with greater ability will succeed them and do it better. So little attention has hitherto been paid to the subject in question that it has been necessary to generalise and draw conclusions almost exclusively from personal experience. But their motto has been—"Prove all things, hold fast to that which is good"; and much that in the beginning and in the light of comparatively limited experience met with their approval, has, on closer examination, been rejected or modified.

But, though this hand-book is necessarily the outcome chiefly of personal observation and experience, the writers have to some extent been able to avail themselves of the knowledge of others, and to refer to competent authorities. This applies especially to Chapter II., for the contents of which frequent reference has been made to the writings of Karmarsch, Thelaus, and others. The Plates at the end, and most of the Illustrations in the body of the book, are executed from original drawings made for the purpose.

In order to keep within due limits, much has been omitted which, perhaps, ought to have been included. Whether or not, on the other hand, some things have been included which ought to have been omitted, must in the meantime be left an open question.

The parts taken by the respective authors are as follows :—Chapter I. has been written by Otto Salomon ; Chapters II., III., and IV., by Carl Nordendahl, who also undertook all arrangements connected with the illustrations ; and Chapter V., by Alfred Johansson. Looked at as a whole, however, this little book is the product of united labour, and it contains nothing which is not the result of diligent interchange of thought.

TRANSLATORS' PREFACE.

THIS Hand-book was written originally for Swedish people, and in accordance with the conditions which prevail in Swedish schools; but the presence of a large body of English teachers at the Autumn Slöjd Course at Nääs has testified for the last four years to the interest taken in the subject by English people, and the latest modifications of the English and Scotch Codes as regards manual training, point to the introduction at no distant date of systematic instruction in some branch of manual work in our state-aided schools. It has therefore seemed desirable that this Hand-book of Wood Slöjd should be translated for English readers with any modifications necessary to make it suitable for English teachers and students. These modifications consist partly of the omission of matter bearing on conditions peculiar to Sweden, and partly of the addition to the text of certain paragraphs, which seemed necessary from an English point of view. Nothing has been taken away or added without careful consultation with Herr Salomon, and without his approval. At the same time, as any additions to the original text have been made at the suggestion of the translators, and as they are responsible for them, these paragraphs have been enclosed in brackets as translators' notes. The whole translation has been revised under the supervision of Herr Salomon and other competent judges at Nääs, and the translators therefore trust that the work they have undertaken is a faithful representation of the views held and acted on at the headquarters of Educational Slöjd.

In giving this book to English readers, they feel, however, that one or two points of detail call for special explanation, particularly as these touch on the fundamental principles of educational Slöjd, and as any misunderstanding as to details might lead to a more serious misunderstanding as to principles. One of these details is *the use of the knife in educational Slöjd*. In the following pages the use of the knife is often recommended where the English carpenter would use the chisel, or some other special tool. The defence of the knife in such cases is to be found in the fact that, while it is the most familiar and the simplest tool which can be put into the hands of the pupil, it is full of potentialities in the hands of the intelligent worker, who can perform with it many exercises which the tradesman executes in a more mechanical way with some other tool.

Again, directions are given which differ in other respects from those which the carpenter would give. The work of the slöjder is often done

not only with different tools, but in a different *order* from that of the artisan. This inversion of order is a natural consequence of the principle that each article shall be executed entirely by the individual worker. Division of labour, though necessary from the tradesman's point of view, is not permitted in Slöjd, deadening, as it does, individuality, and reducing to a minimum the calls made on the intelligence.

These and other deviations from the methods of the carpenter are made not in ignorance, but of set purpose, and have their grounds in the comprehensive principle that all method in Slöjd must aim in the first place at the physical and mental development of the pupil, and only at the production of articles in so far as this subserves the primary aim.

In close connection with this stands the question of the place occupied in the system by the articles produced, *i.e.*, by the *models*. Clear as this question appears in the light of the fundamental principles on which educational Slöjd is based, the idea still seems to prevail to some extent that, if the principles are accepted, the Nääs models must also be accepted unconditionally, and that the two stand and fall together. So far is this from being the case that, at the present time, one series of Nääs models is gradually becoming English in its character, and only waits further suggestions from English teachers to become entirely so. The sole reason that it still contains models which do not entirely fulfil the condition of being familiar and useful in the homes of English children, is that English people have hitherto been unable to suggest satisfactory substitutes. The models are merely the *expression* of the system, and to carry out that system thoroughly they must be national in their character, and ought, therefore, to vary in their nature with the countries into which Slöjd is introduced as a subject of instruction.

As this translation, like the original, is the work of more than one writer, it remains to add that the book has been translated into English by Mary R. Walker, with the assistance of William Nelson on all points relating to technical knowledge and technical terminology.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS edition has been carefully revised, and at the suggestion of Teachers Chapter V. has been entirely re-written, greater detail being given to the description of each Exercise. In addition to this, Plate VI. has been re-drawn, and the "Practical Directions for Making the High School Series of Slöjd Models," by Alfred Johansson, of the Nääs Seminarium, have been incorporated, thus making the book complete from a practical point of view.

These alterations and additions have been approved by Herr Salomon, and the Translators therefore hope that the Handbook will maintain, in this improved form, its position as the authorised English Guide to the Practice of Slöjd.

Table of Contents.

CHAPTER I.

Introductory Remarks.

	PAGE
I. Educational Slöjd - - - -	1
II. The Teacher of Educational Slöjd - - - -	2
III. The special kind of Slöjd recommended - - - -	6
IV. Method - - - -	9
V. The Pupils - - - -	17
VI. The time given to instruction - - - -	18
VII. The Slöjd-room - - - -	18
VIII. The position of the body during work - - - -	21
IX. Some rules for the Slöjd Teacher - - - -	24

CHAPTER II.

Wood or Timber.

A. THE STRUCTURE AND COMPOSITION OF WOOD, Wood-cells, Wood-fibres, Concentric annual layers, Vessels or Air-tubes, Heart-wood and Sap-wood, the Pith and the Medullary Rays, the Sap, Water capacity - - - -	27
B. THE CHANGES WHICH WOOD UNDERGOES - - - -	35
I. Changes in the water capacity. Shrinking, cracking, swelling - - - -	36
II. Means of preventing cracking and warping. Seasoning. Precautions necessary to prevent cracking and warping under special conditions - - - -	40
III. The decay of timber. Means of preventing decay - - - -	43
C. DIFFERENT KINDS OF WOOD - - - -	45
I. Comparison of the qualities of different kinds of wood. The strength, cleavage, hardness, toughness, elasticity, texture, colour, smell, weight, and durability of timber - - - -	45
II. Characteristics of different kinds of trees - - - -	51
1. Needle-leaved trees. 2. Broad-leaved trees.	52

CHAPTER III.

Tools.

A.	A CHOICE OF TOOLS	-	-	-	-	59
B.	APPLIANCES FOR HOLDING THE WORK	-	-	-	-	62
	I. The Bench	-	-	-	-	62
	II. Handscrews	-	-	-	-	68
C.	SETTING OUT	-	-	-	-	70
	I. The Metre-measure	-	-	-	-	70
	II. The Marking-point	-	-	-	-	71
	III. The Marking-gauge	-	-	-	-	71
	IV. Compasses	-	-	-	-	73
	V. Squares and Bevels.	-	-	-	-	74
	VI. Winding-laths or Straight-edges	-	-	-	-	76
D.	TOOLS USED FOR CUTTING UP THE WOOD AND MAKING THE ARTICLES	-	-	-	-	77
	I. Saws	-	-	-	-	77
	1. Saws with Frames	-	-	-	-	82
	1. The Frame-saw.	2. The Bow-saw	-	-	-	82
	2. Saws without Frames	-	-	-	-	85
	1. The Handsaw.	2. The Dove-tail saw.	3. The Tenon-saw.	4. The Compass-saw.	5. The Groove-saw	-
						85
	II. The Axe	-	-	-	-	87
	III. The Knife	-	-	-	-	88
	IV. The Draw-knife	-	-	-	-	89
	V. Chisels, Gouges, Carving tools, &c.	-	-	-	-	89
	1. The Firmer-chisel, and the Mortise-chisel	-	-	-	-	90
	2. Gouges	-	-	-	-	91
	3. The Spoon-gouge and the Spoon-iron	-	-	-	-	92
	4. Carving tools	-	-	-	-	92
	VI. Planes	-	-	-	-	93
	1. Planes with flat soles :—					
	1. The Jack-plane.	2. The Trying-plane.				
	3. The Smoothing-plane.	4. The Rebate-plane				98
	2. Planes for the dressing of curved surfaces :—					
	1. The Round.	2. The Hollow.	3. The Compass-plane	-	-	101
	3. The Old Woman's Tooth-plane, and the Dove-tail Filletster	-	-	-	-	102

	4. The Plough	-	-	-	-	104
	5. The Iron Spokeshave	-	-	-	-	104
VII.	Files	-	-	-	-	105
VIII.	Methods of finishing work	-	-	-	-	106
	1. The Scraper.			2. Sandpaper.		
IX.	The Brace and Bits.	-	-	-	-	108
	1. The Shell-bit.			2. The Centre-bit.		
X.	The Mallet, the Hammer, the Hand-vice, Pincers, and Screwdriver	-	-	-	-	112
E.	THE GRINDING AND SHARPENING OF TOOLS	-	-	-	-	115
F.	THE TOOL CUPBOARD	-	-	-	-	118

CHAPTER IV.

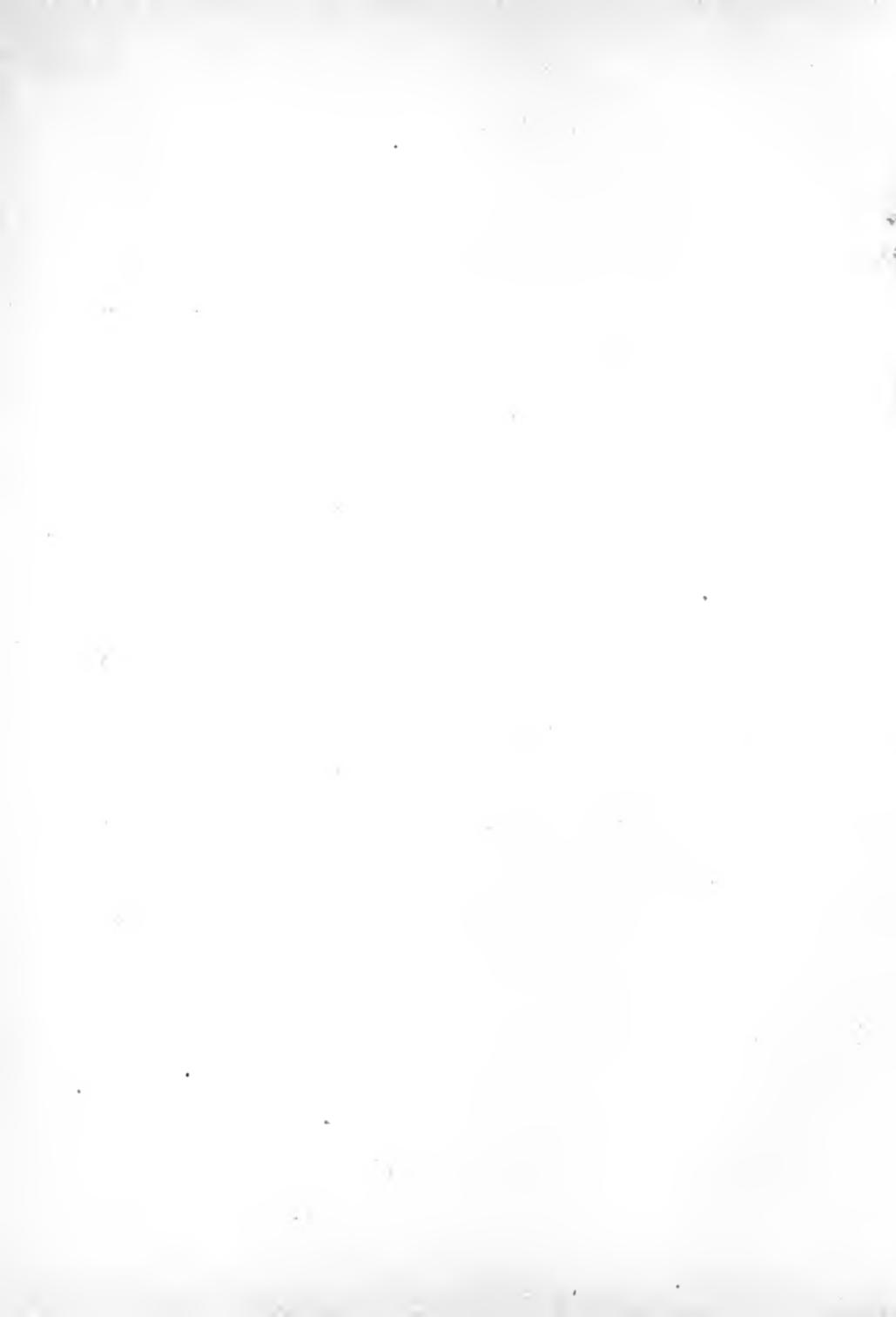
Jointing.

A.	Glueing	-	-	-	-	119
B.	Nailing	-	-	-	-	123
C.	Screwing together	-	-	-	-	124
D.	Jointing by means of the formation of the parts of the joint					125

CHAPTER V.

I.	The Exercises	-	-	-	-	126
	Plates illustrating various positions, etc.	-	-	-	-	184
II.	The High School Series of Models	-	-	-	-	196

	Practical Directions for making the High School Series of Slöjd Models	-	-	-	-	201
	List of tools required for different numbers of pupils	-	-	-	-	251
	Index	-	-	-	-	255
	Price List of Tools, Benches, etc.	-	-	-	-	267



FIRST CHAPTER.

Introductory Remarks.

Educational Slöjd.

By educational slöjd is meant the application of *slöjd* to educational purposes. Slöjd is not to be confounded with the work of the artisan—a mistake which may easily happen if the distinction is not sufficiently strongly emphasized. Speaking generally, the 'slöjder' does not practise his art as a trade, but merely as a change from some other employment; and in the nature of the articles produced, in the tools used in their production, in the manner of executing the work, etc., slöjd and the work of the artisan differ very decidedly the one from the other. Slöjd is much better adapted to be a means of education, because purely economical considerations do not come forward so prominently as must be the case with work undertaken as a means of livelihood.

Educational slöjd differs from so-called *practical slöjd*, inasmuch as in the latter, importance is attached to the *work*; in the former, on the contrary, to the *worker*. It must, however, be strongly emphasized that the two terms, *educational* and *practical*, ought in no way to be considered antagonistic to each other, as frequently happens in popular language; for, from the strictly educational point of view, whatever is educationally right must also be practical, and *vice versa*. When the educational and the practical come into conflict, the cause is always to be found in the pressure of adventitious circumstances, *e.g.*, the number of pupils, the nature of the premises, and, above all, pecuniary resources, etc. To make educational theory and practice coincide is an ideal towards which every teacher must strive. One man, perhaps, may be able to come

nearer to this common ideal than another, but everyone, as he runs his course, must have this goal clearly in view, and in every unavoidable compromise he must endeavour to make what *ought* to be done and what *can* be done come as close together as possible.

*The aim of
education-
at slöjd.*

What, then, is the aim of educational slöjd? To utilise, as is suggested above, the educative force which lies in rightly directed bodily labour, as a means of developing in the pupils physical and mental powers which will be a sure and evident gain to them for life. Views may differ as to what is to be understood by a "cultured" or an "educated" man, but however far apart in other respects these views may lie, they all have at least one thing in common, *i.e.*, that this much disputed culture always appears in its possessors in the form of certain faculties, and that therefore the development of faculty, so far as this can be directed for good, must enter into all educational efforts. This being the case, the influence of slöjd is cultivating and educative, just in the same degree as by its means certain faculties of true value for life reach a development which could not be attained otherwise, or, at least, not in the same degree. Educational slöjd, accordingly, seeks to work on lines which shall insure, during and by means of the exercise it affords, the development of the pupil in certain definite directions. These are of various kinds. As the more important, it is usual to bring forward: *pleasure in bodily labour, and respect for it, habits of independence, order, accuracy, attention and industry, increase of physical strength, development of the power of observation in the eye, and of execution in the hand.* Educational slöjd has also in view *the development of mental power*, or, in other words, is *disciplinary* in its aim.

The Teacher of Educational Slöjd.

*The quali-
fications
required
in the
teacher.*

That no one can teach what he does not know himself is a proposition the validity of which cannot be called in question.

It is equally incontestable that it is by no means sufficient to be in possession of a certain amount of knowledge and dexterity in order to follow with success the important and responsible calling of a teacher. Teaching is an *art* quite as difficult as any other, and for its practice certain qualifications are demanded which are far from being in the possession of all. The teacher must not only know *what* he has to communicate, but also *how* he ought to do it. Nor is this all; for if all instruction is in reality to be *education*, the teacher must rise from the instructor to the educator; he must not only understand how to impart knowledge and dexterity, but also how to impart both in such a manner that they make for the mental development of the pupil, especially with regard to moral training. But as we cannot give to others what we do not ourselves possess, it must necessarily follow that only he who is himself educated can have an educative influence over another. Therefore, exactly in proportion to the educative aim of the teacher does his *personality* enter as an important factor into the work of instruction. Now, since slöjd is to be regarded more as a means of education than a subject of instruction, in the common acceptance of the term, the first demand of all made upon the teacher who undertakes it must be that he should feel himself to be an educator, and strive without ceasing to improve himself as such. This, however, is not sufficient. To be a teacher of educational slöjd, it is necessary to be familiar with its aims, and with the means by which these are to be attained. One of these means is the possession of what is called *technical dexterity*, *i.e.*, dexterity in the right use of tools, and in the accurate production, by their means, of articles involving the exercises required by the particular kind of slöjd in question. The importance of this dexterity must neither be over-estimated nor undervalued. Unfortunately one or other of these errors is frequently committed. On the one hand it is maintained that if a person can only prove that he possesses *Technical dexterity*, *i.e.*, if he himself can

produce good work, he thereby fulfils one of the most important requirements of a good slöjd teacher. From this point of view the skilful artisan or "Slöjder" would be the best teacher of slöjd, because he can with justice be held to possess the best technical qualifications. Past experience, however, has shown that, as a rule, the skilful artisan or "slöjder" is not the best person to fill the responsible post of the slöjd teacher. This follows from the very nature of the case. The artisan has acquired his technical dexterity in a totally different way, and for a totally different purpose, from what is required in educational slöjd. Technical dexterity is the principal thing with him. It is before every other consideration a source of income. In educational slöjd, on the other hand, it is to be regarded only as one means among many whereby the teacher is able to bring an educative influence to bear on the pupils. The artisan who has great technical skill is too often tempted while teaching to use this skill in a way which may be for the advantage of the work with which the pupil is occupied, but is certainly not for the advantage of the pupil himself. His "instruction" consists not infrequently of work which he does for the pupil, with results which are excellent from the economical point of view, but which are very objectionable in their educational aspect. Partly for this reason and partly because the artisan often does not understand how to maintain really good discipline with children; and because, moreover, he is unacquainted with the general principles which apply to all instruction, it has been remarked, that where instruction in slöjd is concerned, even a very capable artisan often falls far behind the results attained by those who are in his opinion little more than bunglers, and who may be far inferior to him in technical dexterity. At the same time, it is by no means intended to convey the idea that the skilled artisan may not be a good teacher of slöjd—provided he understands the difference between slöjd and his trade, and is in possession of the other necessary qualifications—but it is maintained that in such a case it is less *because*

*The artisan
as a teacher
of Slöjd.*

he is an artisan than in spite of it, for the first condition is that he must renounce the traditions of his craft, and become penetrated by educational ideas.

But the truth here, as in so many other cases, lies between the two extremes. It is as hurtful to under-estimate technical skill as it is to over-estimate it. Therefore, let no teacher imagine that he can successfully undertake instruction in slöjd with slight and superficial knowledge on the purely technical side. It will soon and surely be made clear to him that this is not the case. If he has not himself the necessary technical dexterity for his purpose, it will be difficult, indeed almost impossible, for him to make clear to his pupils how they are to handle their tools and execute the work prescribed. Neither will he be able in an efficient way to supervise their work and criticise the quality of what they produce. The feeling of self-mastery which is so essential for the teacher when he stands face to face with his pupils, forsakes him, and the educative results which he intends to attain by means of slöjd are diminished in proportion. It is most important that this should be laid down once for all, because some teachers possibly imagine that the technical skill necessary for teaching may be obtained by attending one or two slöjd courses. This is by no means the case, and the organisers of such slöjd courses are the first to understand and to insist upon the fact, that they can only aim at laying a foundation on which students may afterwards build by means of independent work. Just as little as one can learn to play on any instrument by merely taking lessons for a given time from a music teacher, can skill in the management of tools be acquired and maintained without continuous and earnest practice. The teacher who feels real interest in slöjd must therefore, on his own account, endeavour to improve in respect of technical skill, and this will prove a two-fold gain, because the bodily exercise affords a healthy change from the mental work with which the time of the teacher is chiefly filled.

*Under-
estimation
of the
importance
of technical
dexterity.*

To summarise what has been said in the foregoing: the teacher of educational slöjd must above all things have the habit of mind which is indispensable for the right performance of the teacher's work; his personality must be such as renders him fit to be a teacher; he must know the objects of educational slöjd and the means by which they are to be attained; and finally, he ought to have sufficient dexterity to handle the tools and to execute accurately the work which is incidental to the course of instruction. These are the demands made on him; may he strive to meet them.

The special kind of Slöjd recommended.

Various materials, *e.g.*, wax, clay, paper, pasteboard, wood, metal, &c., may be used in educational slöjd. Wood, however, is for several reasons the most suitable material; hence *wood-slöjd* has been the most popular of all, both in schools and for private instruction. As the name implies, wood-slöjd means "slöjding" in wood. This, again, includes several different kinds of work. Amongst these, however, it is the so-called *slöjd-carpentry* which best fulfils the conditions required when instruction in slöjd is given with educational ends in view. It is adapted to the mental and physical powers of children. By enabling them to make a number of generally useful articles, it awakens and sustains genuine interest. It encourages order and accuracy, and it is compatible with cleanliness and tidiness. Further, it cultivates the sense of form more completely than instruction in drawing does, and, like gymnastics and free play, it has a good influence upon the health of the body, and consequently upon that of the mind. Additional advantages are, that it is excellently adapted for methodical arrangement, comprising as it does a great number of exercises of varying degrees of difficulty, some of which are very easy; and that it gives a considerable degree of general dexterity by means of the many different tools and manual operations which it introduces.

We must not confound slöjd-carpentry with the work done by the carpenter, properly so-called. This is the more necessary because great confusion of ideas prevails on the subject; not least, remarkably enough, amongst those who are interested in slöjd, or give instruction in it.

Difference between slöjd-carpentry and ordinary carpentry.

It must be borne in mind that although slöjd-carpentry and ordinary carpentry have something in common, inasmuch as the same raw material (wood) is employed, and to some extent the same or similar tools are used, yet they differ one from the other in several very important respects. For example, the articles made in slöjd-carpentry are in many cases quite different from those which fall within the province of the carpenter. The articles made in slöjd-carpentry are differentiated partly by their smaller size, for the articles made in workshops are generally much larger; partly by their form, for they are often bounded by variously curved outlines, whilst articles made by the carpenter are generally rectangular or cylindrical. This is especially shown in the case of the many different kinds of spoons, ladles, scoops, handles, &c., &c., which form such an important element in slöjd-carpentry. .

Further, though many tools are common to both kinds of work, there are also considerable differences in this respect. Several tools which are seldom or never used in the carpenter's workshop, *e.g.*, the axe, the draw-knife, and the spoon-iron, occupy an important place in slöjd-carpentry.

The most characteristic tool in slöjd-carpentry is, however, the *knife*, and by the use of this, his chief instrument, the slöjder may always be distinguished from the carpenter, whose favourite tool is the chisel, and who, as seldom as possible, and never willingly, takes the knife in his hand. In carpentry, on the other hand, use is made of a number of tools more or less necessary, which are quite unknown to the slöjder, who works for the most part under more primitive conditions. Distinct differences can also be pointed out in the manner of executing the work (for while division of

labour is practised in carpentry, it is not permitted in slöjd) and in the manner of using the tools. It will be seen from the foregoing that much may pass under the name of instruction in slöjd which, properly speaking, ought simply to be called instruction in carpentry. It is most important that this distinction should be maintained, because otherwise educational slöjd will by degrees be lost in instruction in carpentry as a trade.

Turning
and wood-
carving.

In some schools where slöjd is taught we find *turning* and *wood-carving* as well as slöjd-carpentry. This, however, is not so common now as it was a few years ago. People seem to be coming more and more to the conclusion that both occupations are more suitable for the home than for the school. Neither of them is to be commended from the hygienic point of view. As regards turning, the difficulty of procuring suitable turning-lathes presents in many schools a serious obstacle to its general use; whilst the necessity of performing preliminary exercises, apart from the actual objects made (a proceeding of very doubtful educational value) places turning quite in the shade as compared with slöjd-carpentry. Wood carving, on the other hand, does not involve that energetic bodily *labour* which is of such great importance in connection with educational slöjd. Again, wood-carving, classed as it is with the so-called "finer" kinds of manual work, has a tendency to intensify in the child that contempt for rough bodily labour which has already unfortunately done so much social harm. The danger of this is however greatest when the children are imprudently permitted to ornament objects which they have not made. When wood-carving is used, not as a separate kind of slöjd, but in order to complete slöjd-carpentry, and when ornamentation is only allowed *after* the children are able in a satisfactory way to execute the articles to be embellished by its means, the disadvantages are minimised.

Method.

Systematic action, directed towards an end, is termed *method*. Every form of human activity, in so far as it is concerned with the attainment of a definite preconceived end, must therefore be regulated according to method, and this universally applicable rule holds good in the case of that activity which is directed towards instruction and education. Hence great importance has always been attached to methods of instruction. In fact, in many cases too much attention has been paid to the study of special methods. Not that we agree with those who, by strange confusion of ideas, regard the rules of scientific method as opposed to practice, saying:—“We are practical people, and therefore we mean to teach in our own practical way, not to follow the theoretical methods of others.” They thereby show that they do not understand how, in the very nature of things, there can be only one really practical mode of procedure, and that is the method which is in harmony with sound theory, and that any other way of going to work must be more or less unpractical. On the other hand, it cannot be denied that many teachers misunderstand the true significance of method to such a degree that it becomes the Alpha and Omega of the work. They forget that, strictly speaking, method is merely a *tool*—though a very necessary one—in the hand of the teacher; and that, just as little as a tool can execute a piece of work of its own accord, just so little can method ever be the chief factor in instruction. The teacher’s power to apply method is the determining factor. A good method in the hands of a truly capable teacher will always give better results than a bad method. The best method is of comparatively little value if the teacher is inefficient.

It will now be clear that slöjd, whether regarded as a subject of school instruction in the usual sense, or as a purely disciplinary subject, must be treated according to rules of

method. The ordinary rules of method can be applied to it; and chief amongst them those which are generally regarded as fundamental principles, namely, *that instruction shall proceed gradually from the more easy to the more difficult, from the simple to the complex, and from the known to the unknown*, it being always understood that the starting point is sufficiently easy, simple, and well-known.

*The
exercises.*

In drawing up a system of method in slöjd teaching it is difficult to find any fully logical principle of arrangement elsewhere than in the *exercises*. By exercises in this connection is to be understood that manipulation of the materials by means of one tool or more in a definite way, for a definite object. Now these exercises can be arranged in a series, in conformity with the rules given above. This could not be done so easily if the tools themselves constituted the principle of arrangement, because, *e.g.*, in the case of two tools, some exercises performed with the one may be easier, and some on the contrary may be more difficult, than the exercises which are performed with the other. It is obvious that the models cannot constitute the principle of arrangement, because they are merely the incidental expressions of the exercises. When, therefore, it is said that the models in a series are graded from the more easy to the more difficult, it is meant that the exercises occurring in these models proceed in this way. The exercises themselves are partly simple partly complex: the latter consisting of two or more simple exercises in combination. The given number of exercises entering into the work of special kinds of slöjd depends more or less upon opinion, for it often happens that what is regarded as one exercise might be analysed into two or more, or might be considered as a part of a more complex exercise. Hence the eighty-eight exercises in slöjd-carpentry enumerated further on, might easily be increased or decreased in number, depending entirely upon how far it is considered advisable to carry this analysis or synthesis.

The exercises, their number, their names, and their order are not, however, the only factors which determine method in slöjd. The way in which they should be taught must be included. There are different modes of procedure. One of these is to teach the exercises one after the other, simply as isolated or "abstract" exercises, until they have all been performed. This may be justified from the point of view of method in general, but opinions may differ, not to put it too strongly, as to its educational soundness. Another mode of procedure is to apply each exercise, after it has been practised separately or in the abstract, in the construction of a given object or model. The exercises themselves are thus given as *preliminary practice*. This, though certainly a step in the right direction, does not fully satisfy the demands of educational method, which requires us to proceed from the concrete to the abstract, and not *vice versa*; and, moreover, such unnecessarily round-about methods cause the loss of valuable time which might be better employed. Method in slöjd only becomes educationally sound when the pupil, by constructing objects which can be used in everyday life, acquires dexterity in performing the exercises as they occur. To take an illustration from language teaching, the first mode of procedure corresponds to the learning of abstractions in the form of grammatical rules; the second corresponds to the application of these rules in sentences after they have been learned; the third corresponds to the method by which the pupil is led up, through sentences or combinations of sentences, to the laws of language which in them find expression.

There are, however, other fundamental principles which must be adhered to in arranging a series of models in such a way that the exercises involved shall follow each other in methodical order. The general nature of the models and the manner in which the exercises ought to be introduced in them must be considered. In choosing a series of models the best plan is undoubtedly to consider local conditions, and endeavour to make it exactly representative of articles which can be

Method of teaching the exercises.

Arrangement of a series of models.

used in the homes of the pupils. By this means interest in the instruction given is better aroused and maintained, not only in the pupils, but—and this is quite as important—in the parents, and thus the bond between the school and the home is strengthened.* Opinion is now probably almost unanimous that all articles of luxury should be excluded. (Such articles, however, are by no means synonymous with articles intrinsically beautiful.) The interest of the pupils is also heightened if the first articles presented to them are no larger or more difficult than can be executed satisfactorily in a comparatively short time. The first models ought, on this account, to include few exercises; and it may be laid down as a general rule that, as far as possible, each successive model should include only one new exercise, or two at the most. In the arrangement of the series, attention must also be paid to alternation in the form of the models. The articles which are included in slöjd-carpentry consist partly of “*modelled*” articles bounded by curved surfaces, and partly of *rectangular articles* bounded principally by plane surfaces. It is very important that any arrangement of models in a series should present good alternation between these two kinds, and, generally speaking, a modelled object should follow a rectangular object, and *vice versa*. As a result, each model acquires to some extent the

* As some confusion of ideas appears to prevail in England between the importance of the *educational principles* on which slöjd is based, and the *models* in which these principles are exemplified, it seems desirable to draw the attention of readers to this passage. It indicates sufficiently clearly that, in whatever country Swedish slöjd may be adopted, the more familiar and the more serviceable the articles made are to the inhabitants of that country, the more nearly will the method of teaching conform to one of the great principles of educational slöjd, viz. : that the pupil's interest shall be excited and sustained by the making of articles which he himself or the other members of his family can use. Many of the models at Nääs have, within the last year or two, been either modified or changed entirely in order to render them suitable for English students, and it is incumbent upon every slöjd teacher to make his own series of models conform to the ideas and requirements of the people among whom he teaches, keeping in view the general principles of method which would apply to any series.—Trs.

charm of novelty, and this still further increases in the pupils that interest for their work which is of the very greatest importance as regards the educational benefits to be derived from slöjd.

The manner in which the details and finished appearance of the objects he is to execute are made clear to the pupil, must be included within the province of method. It is assumed that in this, as in all other instruction, it is of the highest importance that the teacher strives to make his teaching as *intuitional* as possible. To this end, in the elementary stages, the models should always be executed after drawings and models, and in the first instance invariably after *models* which are placed before the pupils for accurate imitation.

*Intuitional
nature of
the
instruction.*

As, however, it has been proved to be difficult, in many cases indeed almost impossible, to preserve even a well-executed wooden model in its original shape and size, and as, for other reasons, it is highly advantageous to connect instruction in slöjd with instruction in drawing, the model should be copied to as great an extent as possible by the aid of geometrical constructions, sufficiently simple to require in the pupil only a slight acquaintance with geometrical drawing. In addition to this the most important measurements of the model's dimensions should be given, in order that the pupil may make use of his rule or metre-measure.* By degrees drawings in perspective and projections may be introduced as patterns *together with* the model; and finally, when the pupil has reached the highest stage, and has attained sufficient dexterity in slöjd and in the interpretation of a drawing, the model may even be taken away, and the work executed

* Two Editions of the "Nääs Slöjd Diagrams" on cards have been published by George Philip & Son. One set has metric measurements, and the other English measurements, so that either the metric or the English rule can be used in the Classes.

after a drawing only. This may be regarded as the *final aim* in elementary instruction in slöjd.

Self-
reliance.

It is an essential condition of any method of instruction in *educational* slöjd, that the work of the pupils shall be *independently* and *accurately* executed, for only thus can habits of self-reliance, order, and accuracy, so important in the formation of character, be developed. In order that self-reliance may be developed, the teacher must guard himself against giving more help than is absolutely necessary, whether this help consists in explaining the best way of doing the work, or in doing the work instead of the pupil. As regards the latter, the teacher will do well to lay down, as a general rule, that he *never* should touch the pupil's work, for only by this means can he avoid the temptation, to which unfortunately many teachers have succumbed, to execute the most important parts of the work instead of the pupil. At the same time he must remember that it is also hurtful to the pupil, and that it deprives his instruction of considerable educational value, if by unnecessary explanations he hinders the pupil from using his own judgment to discover the right way. The teacher's art in educational slöjd consists essentially in being as passive and unobtrusive as possible, while the pupil is actively exercising both head and hand. Only in this way can the feeling of self-reliance arise and gain strength. Let the teacher content himself with pointing out the way, and watching that the pupil walks in it. Let him as much as possible refrain from leading where this is unnecessary and, it may be, hurtful.

Accuracy.

In order to develop the habit of accuracy in the pupil by means of slöjd, it is essential that he should make his model as nearly as possible an exact likeness of his pattern, or—when the model has changed in shape and size—an exact copy of what it ought to be, as indicated by the geometrical construction, or complete drawing and given measurements. We very often hear people say that it is quite unnecessary to be so particular with the work, since,

e.g., a flower-stick can be quite as serviceable whether it is a little shorter or a little longer. This is perfectly true on the assumption that the making of a serviceable flower-stick is our chief end in making it. In educational slöjd, however, the principal object is not the article made, but the mental and physical benefits which accrue to the pupil by means of the work. In this case it cannot be unimportant that he should be exercised in the endeavour to execute something as well and as accurately as he is able to do it. For in this way his natural disposition to work carelessly is checked, while at the same time the degree of accuracy to which he is gradually accustomed will be of great advantage farther on in the series of models, when he has to perform such operations as mortising, grooving, dovetailing, &c., which call for no inconsiderable degree of accuracy in their performance. Though a pen-holder need not be of any exact size, this is by no means the case with the joints in dovetailing; and in making the former exact, the latter operation is rendered possible, or at all events easier. At the same time, we must not demand of the pupil work which is absolutely correct in all its details, for this clearly lies beyond his powers. The teacher must exercise his "tact" as an educator in determining the degree of accuracy which is to be demanded of every separate pupil in every separate model, and this being done, the teacher must unhesitatingly reject the articles which fail to come up to the required standard. But in order that the pupil may not be disheartened by repeated rejections, it is advisable not to insist on the repetition of the same model more than, at the outside, *three consecutive times*. If the pupil fails to succeed the third time, he should be allowed to pass on to the next model, and not required to return to the one he failed to make, until he has succeeded in making the other; this he usually does easily enough, owing to the increased facility he has gained by practice. If the pupil is permitted to pass over a model altogether without bringing it up to the required standard, it may encourage him in caprice, and

counteract the development of habits of perseverance, the acquisition of which is of such great importance in life. Further, the general rule should be strictly observed that every article is to be executed as well and as beautifully as possible. In educational slöjd it is much more important that what is made should be the product of good and conscientious labour, than that much should be produced. Therefore, whatever bears the impress of carelessness and haste must be rejected without mercy, lest the pupil fall into bad habits, and the educative influences of slöjd be weakened.

*Individual
instruction,
versus class-
teaching.*

The question whether individual instruction or class-teaching should be adopted, comes also under the head of method in slöjd-teaching. As the aim in educational slöjd is totally different from mere mechanical instruction in the art of using tools and making articles, it may be laid down as a principle, that only in the degree in which the personal influence of the teacher reaches each individual pupil, can his influence be truly educative. And as human beings differ greatly from one another in natural disposition and other respects, instruction, in order to reach the highest degree of educative value, must be specially adapted to each individual. It is as easy to explain, point out, lead, and help *too much* as *too little*, and thus to check that mental development which can only be secured by systematic well-balanced effort. This is, and this will continue to be, the disadvantage of class-teaching:—this term being assumed to mean, instruction during which all the pupils taking part in the lesson have their attention directed at the same time to the same part of the subject. This disadvantage can never be lost sight of, but in the case of several subjects of instruction, especially the purely intellectual subjects, it is counterbalanced to some degree, because, by means of class-teaching, the practical benefit is gained that a teacher can teach a larger number of pupils than he could teach individually. Slöjd, however, does not belong to these subjects, because in it the teacher's powers are limited, to start with,

by the number of pupils he can efficiently *supervise* at work ; and it can speedily be demonstrated that he cannot, in class teaching, supervise more than by individual instruction, *provided that in each case equally good results are aimed at.* On the contrary, he may find that he cannot supervise so many. Another practical objection to class-teaching in cases where slöjd is applied to *educational* purposes, is the impossibility of keeping the class together in the execution of their work. It follows either that the more backward pupils scamp their work or are allowed to pass over some of the models in the series, or else that the superior pupils are checked in their progress, and thereby prevented from doing as many exercises as they otherwise could have accomplished.*

The leading question of method in educational slöjd teaching ought to be less *how much*, or *how many*, as *how well*.

The Pupils.

The age during which instruction can be received with advantage in any subject whatever is limited downwards as well as upwards by the work it involves. As regards slöjd-carpentry, children ought to have attained the degree of development which corresponds roughly to 10 or 11 years. Otherwise they cannot be expected to meet the demands made on the spirit of self-reliance during work. At the same time, as children of the same age differ greatly in point of development, our guiding principle should not be the date of birth, but the mental and physical powers which the child has at command. What one child of nine years can accomplish with ease may be beyond the powers of another child of twelve. As regards the *upward* limit of age, it lies considerably beyond school years.

*The age of
the pupils.*

* On certain occasions it is advantageous to demand the attention of all the pupils at one time, *e.g.*, when the teacher wishes to explain the properties of a tool and the method of using it, or wishes to examine all the pupils together. These, however, are special cases, which ought to be quite independent of the slöjd-work itself, being in no sense class-teaching of Slöjd, but class-teaching of the use of tools.

The number of the pupils.

The number of pupils who can be managed individually by one teacher at the same time varies considerably, and is influenced partly by the teacher's general efficiency, partly by his special efficiency, and partly by the stage at which the pupils are. The teacher who is unaccustomed to teach slöjd will probably be unable at first to manage with ease more than from 6 to 8 pupils, especially if they are beginners; later on the number may be increased to 12, and by degrees, under favourable conditions, to 15, 18, or at most 20.* No teacher, however, ought to let his desire to increase the number of his pupils induce him to take more at one time than he can manage in a thoroughly satisfactory way.

The Time given to Instruction.

The length and the distribution of the lessons.

A slöjd lesson ought not to last less than an hour and a half, or more than two hours and a half. It ought, if possible, to intervene between hours devoted to intellectual instruction, because it offers a wholesome variety for mind and body. Slöjd by artificial light should be avoided as much as possible. It is desirable that every pupil should receive three lessons a week. They should be given every other day, and if the pupils have gymnastics on the intervening days, it will secure, to some extent at least, the necessary physical exercise on a rational basis.

The Slöjd-room.

The use of the school-room for slöjd.

The days are past, in Sweden at least, when it was regarded as a degradation of the rooms devoted to intellectual instruction to use them for slöjd teaching. Since "practical" slöjd has been forced to make way for educational slöjd, and the importance of the latter has been more and more recognised, no thoughtful teacher can think that his class-room loses dignity because manual labour is carried on in it. In many schools where space is limited, slöjd must, at first at least, be

* This has been proved by observations made in the elementary schools in Stockholm.

given a share of the school-room. Where this room is large enough, and where the slöjd-teacher's spirit of order is sufficiently strong to make him keep his department always tidy, this combination may be made without special inconvenience. It is advisable to place the slöjd-benches and the tool-cupboard at one end of the room. The removal of desks to make temporary room for benches should only be permitted when such an arrangement is unavoidable.

The use of the school-room for the double purpose of intellectual work and slöjd is not, however, to be recommended when circumstances permit of separate rooms being fitted up. Different arrangements are required for the two branches of instruction. A description of the general arrangement required in a room devoted to the purposes of educational slöjd carpentry follows. This description is based on experience gained in the teaching of slöjd up to the present time. It must, however, be borne in mind in this connection, that the conditions in an elementary school in the country and in a school in a large town or in closely-populated manufacturing districts, vary according to circumstances.

As regards the former, we must, as a general rule, be less exacting in our demands; in the latter, on the contrary, arrangements may be made which shall meet fully the educational requirements of a good slöjd-room. In an ordinary elementary school in the country, where there may not be more than from eight to twelve pupils requiring instruction at the same time, a slöjd-room measuring 16 ft. in length, 13 ft. in breadth, and 10 ft. in height, will be large enough. It should be situated on the ground-floor. The walls should be wainscotted, and the room should contain three or four double, or six or eight single, benches; cupboards for tools, models, and finished articles; a grindstone, a chopping-block, and, if turnery is included in the course, also a turning-lathe. If the room is kept locked between lessons, the tools may be disposed round the walls instead of being kept in a cupboard. The wood required should be stored in some place adjoining.

The slöjd-room in ordinary country schools.

The slöjd-room in large schools.

In a large school, where opportunity is given for making the arrangements for slöjd teaching as complete as possible, the following directions may be found useful:—

Situation.—The slöjd-room (not “work-shop”) should open from a lobby either on the ground-floor or on the top storey. It should never be situated in the basement. If it is on the ground floor, care should be taken that it is as far as possible from the other school-rooms, that the noise may not disturb the pupils in the latter. If a slöjd-room is situated *above* a school-room, it should be furnished with a double floor, with an intervening layer of sawdust to deaden the noise.

Area.—To accommodate 20 pupils at one time, the room should be about 50 ft. long and 23 ft. broad. This will give adequate space for 20 separate benches (placed in 5 rows), a turning lathe, a saw-bench, grindstones, chopping-blocks, cupboards for tools, models, and finished articles, and a rack for wood. Wood ought not to be suspended from the roof if this can be avoided, partly because it is unsightly, and partly because it gives unnecessary trouble. The space between the benches ought to be about $2\frac{1}{2}$ ft.

Height.—The slöjd-room ought to be from 12 ft. to 15 ft. high.

Windows.—The slöjd-room should be well-lighted by large and properly placed windows. The area of window surface is generally reckoned as 25 to 30 per cent. of the floor area. If the slöjd-room is on the ground floor, windows should, if possible, be placed in three of its walls. If it is on the top storey it is better to let the light enter by sky-lights than dormer windows.

The Walls.—To prevent injury to the walls they should be lined with wood, or at all events with a tolerably high wainscoting. The doors and the window-frames should be painted, but the walls need only be varnished.

Warming.—Where there is no central system of heating,

the best way to heat the slöjd-room in winter is by two large stoves. The temperature ought not to be higher than from 54° to 57° F. The glue should be melted on a small stove heated by gas or oil.

Artificial light.—As work is done in the slöjd room on winter afternoons, arrangements must be made for artificial light. This light, whether furnished by gas or by electricity, must always come from above, in order that no shadows may be cast on the work.

The Position of the Body during Work.

If slöjd is to contribute towards physical development—a point on which most people are now tolerably unanimous—methodical and effectual arrangements must be made to this end.

It can easily be demonstrated that of all kinds of slöjd, slöjd-carpentry in conjunction with gymnastics is the best adapted for physical training, but it is equally clear that this can only be the case, provided that the positions assumed and the motions prescribed are well-selected. As regards this we have to find the happy medium. On the one hand it cannot be denied that many of the so-called “instinctive” positions assumed by artisans and “slöjders” have reference more to what is advantageous for the work than for the worker. On the other hand it must be granted that though slöjd ought to be considered as “applied gymnastics,” this principle should not be carried out so pedantically that the idea of work is lost sight of. Slöjd is essentially *work*, and not merely gymnastic exercises with tools as apparatus; and all that we are justified in aiming at is, that when we have a choice between positions and movements favourable to physical development and those which are unfavourable, we must adopt the former. We may rest assured that, in the long run, not only the worker but the work will gain thereby.

Harmonious or all-round physical development is mate-

Slöjd and gymnastics should go hand in hand.

Slöjd is work, not merely gymnastic exercises.

*Uniform
exercise of
the muscles
of both
sides.*

rially advanced when the muscles of both sides are equally exercised during work. This is a fundamental rule in gymnastics. It is equally binding in slöjd whenever it is capable of application. The objection we sometimes hear that the left hand has not the same strength and steadiness as the right, depends on a confusion between cause and effect, because this inferiority in most cases is caused by the fact that at an early age the left hand in the matter of exercise is neglected for the right. It is, moreover, easy to enumerate a great number of operations in which both hands execute almost the same work. As examples may be given: sowing seed, kneading dough, weaving, hewing wood, driving, rowing, playing on the piano, &c. In slöjd-carpentry the *saw*, the *plane*, the *centre-bit*, and the *file* may, in particular, be directed alternately by the right and by the left hand, and the change should be made by all the pupils together, at the command of the teacher, about every half hour. On the other hand, the use of the axe or the knife by the left hand is not to be recommended until great experience in the use of the left has been gained, on account of the greater danger of injury should the tool accidentally slip aside.

*Positions
and
movements
during
work.*

The following general rules may be given for the positions and movements in educational slöjd-carpentry.

Position of the chest.—The chest encloses the important vital organs, the heart and the lungs, the former of which regulates the circulation of the blood, and the latter the process of respiration. That these may freely and without hindrance perform their functions, the space in which they move must not be diminished. It must rather be enlarged. We must therefore endeavour to prevent any narrowing of the chest, and attention should always be directed to keeping the shoulders well back during work, in order that the chest may be expanded. Inspiration and expiration should take place quietly, without any effort whatever.

The head should be held as erect as possible, to avoid un-

necessary loss of muscular power, to permit greater freedom of circulation, and to preserve the eyesight from injury during work. When the head is bent forwards the veins in some situations are compressed, in others extended; in both cases their calibre is diminished. In connection with the effect the position of the head may have upon the circulation, the importance of loose clothing should be noticed. Tightly fitting collars and neckties should be above all avoided. To preserve the sight, work should not be held nearer the eye than about 12 in.: for this reason it is very advantageous in educational slöjd to use exclusively benches whose construction permits of their being raised to different heights. Thus the work may always be held at the proper distance from the eye, while the position of the head is, from the hygienic point of view, most advantageous.

The feet should be so placed as to afford the best and firmest support during work. In the execution of every exercise a certain mechanical resistance has to be overcome. For this purpose muscular strength, and in certain circumstances the weight of the body, must be called into play. This resistance must be regarded as force opposing the worker in a certain direction, and he must allow his body to assume the state of equilibrium most favourable in relation to the direction of the force. This is done as regards the feet, when the line of most resistance is in front of the worker, by placing the one foot right in front of the other; and when the resistance is from the side, by placing the feet apart sideways, in the direction of the shoulders. In both cases the feet form the chief support of the equilibrium of the body. The angle formed by the foot in front with the foot behind, may vary from 60° to 90° in planing, and from 45° to 60° in sawing. The position with the feet astride may also be assumed in cutting with the knife, in perpendicular chiselling, and perpendicular boring.

The position and movements of the body.—The worker should assume a position, in relation to his work, which enables the muscles of his arms to have free play in the most favourable direction for its execution, *i.e.*, in a direction

opposed to the line of resistance, or friction between the tool and the piece of wood. In certain exercises, such as planing and boring, this friction is, to some extent, increased by the necessary bending of the body over the tool, whereby the weight of the body helps to press it against the wood. In using some tools, *e.g.*, the saw, this weight may also act as a kind of regulator, by gently setting the body in motion backwards and forwards. The reader is referred to *Plates I.-VIII.* for illustrations of some of the most important positions.*

Some Rules for the Slöjd Teacher.

Order an indispensable condition.

In all teaching, and not least in slöjd teaching, the maintenance of order must be laid down as an indispensable condition. The following simple directions may serve for guidance to the teacher.

The pupils' places for work.

Every pupil should have a fixed place at a bench. When circumstances permit, it is advisable to have at disposal as many benches (or when benches intended for two are used, half as many benches) as there are pupils taking part simultaneously in a lesson.

Numbers on the benches and tools.

The benches and tools should be furnished with numbers, so that they can easily be distinguished from one another. The following tools should, if possible, belong to each bench, and be marked with its number: knife, trying-plane, smoothing-plane, jack-plane, square, marking-gauge, compasses, rule or metre measure, and scraper.† Other tools may serve the whole class in common.

Fixed places for tools.

All tools should have fixed places. Those belonging to the bench may be allowed to lie upon it until the close of the lesson, but all tools in common use should be laid by or hung up immediately after use, in order that they may be easily found.

The teacher must take care that all the edge tools in use are

* These plates are specially intended to illustrate the position of body which the worker should assume when beginning the particular exercise indicated. A new series of 16 large plates, "Positions of the Body," has lately been published at Nääs.

† These constitute the bench-set.

well sharpened, and that any tool which gets out of order, or is broken, is repaired as soon as possible. If practicable, the pupils should do their own repairs.

*The sharpening and repairing of tools
The work.*

At the beginning of the lesson the pupils should, in an orderly way, get out their tools and work. The latter, if begun in a previous lesson, should be kept in boxes specially provided for the purpose, and should be marked with the pupils' names.

In order to teach and superintend in the full meaning of these terms, the teacher must not stand still in one place. He must go from one pupil to another with advice and criticism. The pupils, on the contrary, must, as far as possible, remain at their benches. If they desire any advice from the teacher, they must not attract his attention by calling out, but by some signal, *e.g.*, holding up one hand, standing in front of the bench and looking towards him, etc. All unnecessary talking must be carefully avoided.

Teacher and pupils during work.

The pupil himself, guided by the teacher, must select suitable wood. Waste must be avoided as far as possible.

Selection of wood.

The pupil must not be allowed to polish with sand-paper until the teacher has examined the work and found that sufficient use has been made of cutting tools. The sand-paper is to be kept by the teacher and given out by him as required. About 6 sq. in. is calculated for each model. The calculation is founded on the supposition that though the models become larger as the course proceeds, the greater facility of the pupil diminishes in about the same degree his need of sand-paper.

Sand-paper.

At the end of the lesson all the tools should be put back in their places, care being taken that all the saws are loosened. The tools should be counted by the "captain," or monitor, appointed for the class, after which the teacher sees that everything is in its right place. The wood and the pieces of work are put away tidily. The benches are brushed and made clean with a brush which should hang by the side of each bench, and the floor is swept. The shavings, however, need not be carried away oftener than once or twice a week.

Putting the sloyd room in order.

*Finished
work.*

When the finished pieces of work have been "passed" by the teacher, a label should be stuck on, and on this label should be stated the number of the model and its name, the name and age of the pupil, and the number of hours spent in making it. If it is considered desirable to give every piece of work a value, this also may be mentioned on the label.

*Taking the
work home.*

Although from the educational point of view it is advisable that the pupils should at once take home their work, it is generally for other reasons more expedient that it should remain in the school in the care of the teacher until it can be exhibited publicly at an examination or terminal breaking-up. After this has taken place, the articles are to be regarded as the property of the makers. The sale of work for the benefit of the school should never be thought of.

A very good plan is to allow the pupils to take home their work as soon as it is finished, in order to show it to their parents, on the understanding that, after they have seen it, it is brought back to the school, to be kept there as long as necessary.

Daybook.

The teacher should enter in a day-book, arranged for the purpose, careful notes regarding the pupils taking part in the slöjd lessons, their presence and absence from lessons, the articles they make, etc., etc.

CHAPTER II.

Wood, or Timber.

The material generally used in slöjd-teaching, and most suitable for the purpose, is *wood* or *timber*.

Intelligent knowledge of the material used is as essential to the teacher as acquaintance with the tools required. He ought, *e.g.*, to be familiar with the qualities which render different kinds of wood more or less appropriate for different purposes. Accordingly the description of the tools given in Chapter III. is here preceded by a brief account of the growth of trees; of the most important properties of wood, and the principal changes which it undergoes; and by a comparison of the technical qualities of the various kinds of wood in common use.

A. The Structure and Composition of Wood.

Wood or timber forms the greater part of the stems and branches of trees and shrubs.

To examine the inner structure of a tree-stem, a section may be made at right angles to the direction of its length, *i.e.*, a transverse or *cross* section; or from the pith to the bark in the line of one of the radii and parallel to the direction of the length, *i.e.*, a radial section; or a third section may be made at right angles to both the preceding as a tangent to the circumference, *i.e.*, a tangential section.

*A tree-stem
in section.*

On examining the cross-section of a stem we find an outer ring, the bark, consisting of a corky layer, the outer bark, and the inner bark or bast; next comes the wood, constituting the chief portion of the stem, and in the central part is a

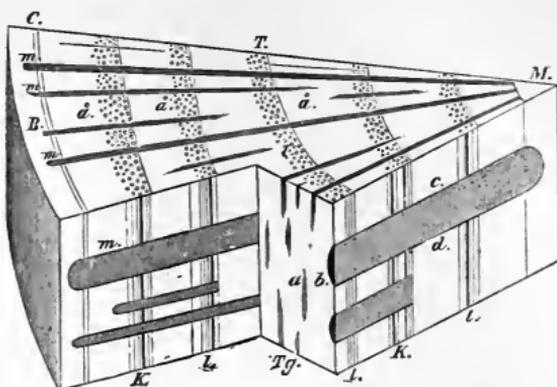


Fig. 1. Three sections of a tree-stem, at right angles to one another.

T. cross section, *K.* radial section, *Tg.* tangential section. *M.* medulla or pith, *B.* Bark, *C.* Cambium, *aa.* Concentric annual layers, *mm.* Medullary rays, *ab.* thickness of medullary rays, *ca.* height of medullary rays, *v.* vessels. Between the wood and the bast lies a narrow, light-coloured ring, the *Cambium*. This consists of a layer of embryonic cells, from which are developed on the one side wood, and on the other bast, and it is *here* that the growth of the tree takes place.

The Cambium forms the soft, moist, spongy mass which may be seen under the bark in spring when the sap begins to rise. It consists of microscopic cells, some of which are long, prismatic, and pointed at the ends, while others are shorter and have ends which terminate abruptly. The inner bark and wood are developed chiefly from the long cells, the medullary rays from the short ones.

Wood Cells.

The formation of wood.

The young cells from which wood is developed have at first very thin walls. They are filled with *sap*, the fluid which nourishes the growing tree, and which circulates with ease from one thin walled cell to another, and thus permeates the whole of the tissue. Gradually the walls of the cells become thicker; the cell contents solidify; the sap flows less

and less freely; the whole tissue assumes the characteristics of wood, and ceases to take part in the circulation and assimilation of the sap.

The cellular tissue consists chiefly of *cellulose*, the chemical constituents of which are carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen.

Wood Fibres.

The cells from which wood is developed are principally the long-pointed cells. They lie close together and overlap one another at the ends, thus forming minute *tubes* or *fibres*. The zone of wood in any stem consists of these fibres massed together, and extending in the direction of the length of the stem. The connection between separate fibres is often very slight, as is shown by the ease with which they may be separated.

In trees of regular growth the fibres are straight and parallel. Wood of this kind is called "straight fibred." It is easily split. This is not the case with wood in which the fibres are crooked, or twisted about one another, as in gnarled or mis-shapen trees. The fibres in the root, the lower part of the stem, knotty branches and rough excrescences are always crooked, and sometimes they are twisted and involved in the most remarkable way. This gives rise to the peculiar speckled and veined appearance which is so highly prized in some kinds of wood.

The bast also consists of fibres, but they are longer and usually tougher than wood-fibres.

Concentric Annual Layers.

A new layer of bast and a new layer of wood are formed annually. This new formation goes on rapidly in spring and early summer, when vital activity in the tree is at its height. The cells are then large, and the wood formed from them, *i.e.*, *spring wood*, is soft and loose in texture and light in colour. After the tree has budded the formation of wood goes on for

a time, but less actively. The cells diminish in size and in diameter, and are more closely packed together. The wood formed at this period—*autumn wood*—is generally darker in colour and closer in texture than spring wood. There are fewer vessels (see p. 31) in autumn wood; in spring wood, on the contrary, they are numerous and quite visible as pores.

*Distinctness
of the con-
centric
annual
layers.*

In consequence of the characteristics of autumn wood, the boundary line between two periods of vegetation is clearly defined, and it is easy to distinguish the *concentric annual layers* which mark each yearly increase in growth.

These layers are most sharply defined in needle-leaved trees and in some broad-leaved trees, *e.g.*, the oak, the ash, and the elm.* They are less conspicuous in the birch, the aspen, the alder, etc., and in some cases it is even difficult to distinguish them at all. As a new layer of wood is formed every year, the age of a tree may be determined by the number of layers.

*Determina-
tion of the
age of a
tree.*

In the tropics, where vegetation goes on during almost the entire year without any well-marked period of rest, the concentric annual layers disappear entirely.

The breadth of the concentric layers varies in different trees. In some cases they are more than 1 inch broad, in others scarcely $\frac{1}{16}$ inch. Their breadth may vary even in the same stem, depending on the more or less favourable weather of successive seasons. The layers on the side exposed to the south are often broader than those on the north. In old needle-leaved trees we usually find very narrow layers nearest the pith; beyond these the layers widen for the greater portion of the stem, and then contract once more until the outermost ones are often so narrow that they can with difficulty be distinguished by the naked eye. See Fig. 2.



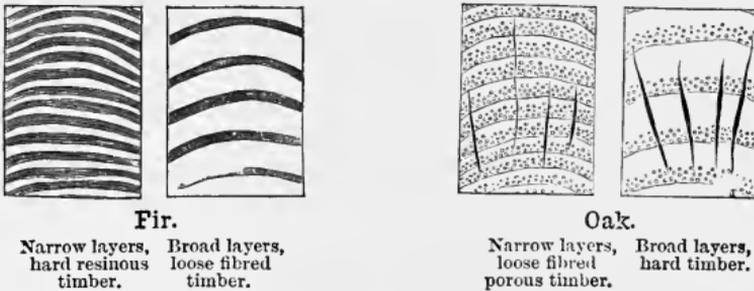
Fig. 2. — Showing manner of growth in needle-leaved trees.

* The terms *needle-leaved trees* and *broad-leaved trees* used throughout this book may be taken as practically synonymous with Conifers and Dicotyledonous trees.—TRs.

Narrow annual layers betoken good wood in needle-leaved trees; but the opposite holds good in the case of broad-leaved trees with large pores, *e.g.*, the oak, the ash, and the elm. Here broad annual layers are characteristic of a good quality of wood, because the pores which render the wood open in the grain occur chiefly in that portion of the layer which is formed in early spring, and are less numerous in the closer tissue of the autumn wood. See Fig. 3.

Close and loose timber.

Fig. 3.



Vessels or Air-tubes.

When a cross-section of a stem is carefully examined a number of minute holes or *pores* are seen. These are the mouths of vessels or air-tubes, which penetrate the whole substance of the wood, parallel with the fibres. Their function is to enable the air to circulate in the stem, and they are found even in wood of the closest grain, rendering it porous. Vessels are most numerous in the wood formed early in spring, and very few are found in autumn wood, a circumstance which helps to make the annual layers more distinct. According to the size of these vessels wood is said to be *fine* or *coarse-grained*.

The porousness of wood.

Each kind of tree has something peculiar to itself in the manner of distribution, the number, and the size of its vessels. They are most marked in the oak, the ash, and the elm, giving to the wood of these trees, when seen in vertical

section, its striped or streaked appearance. In a number of trees on the other hand, *e.g.*, the birch, the vessels are hardly visible, and they are distributed pretty equally over the concentric annual layers, making it difficult to distinguish consecutive layers.

Resin. Needle-leaved trees have no air vessels, but have channels filled with resin, *i.e.*, *resin-canals*. These occur chiefly in the autumn wood, to which they give a darker colour.

Heart-wood and Sap-wood.

In many kinds of trees, when the stem is sawn across, a considerable difference may be observed between the appearance of the inner and older, and the outer and younger concentric annual layers. The inner layers are usually firmer and closer in texture and darker in colour than the outer, which are less compact, lighter in colour, and full of sap.

The Heart-wood, the valuable part of the stem.

The firmer, darker wood is called *heart-wood* or *duramen*; the looser, lighter wood, *sap-wood* or *alburnum*. As a rule the latter forms a comparatively narrow ring round the former, which constitutes the greater portion of the stem, and which, when sound, is the valuable portion on account of its firmer texture and greater durability.

The proportion which the heart-wood bears to the sap-wood varies in different kinds of trees. For example, in the case of broad-leaved trees, the proportion is largest in the oak, the ash, and the elm; least in the birch, the maple, the alder, the hornbeam, etc. In needle-leaved trees, it is greatest in the larch and the fir; least in the pine. The resin in these trees is found chiefly in the heart-wood. It greatly increases its closeness and durability, and darkens its colour.

The most striking example of the *difference* in appearance between heart-wood and sap-wood is presented by ebony, in which the former is black and the latter white.

The Pith and the Medullary Rays.

The *pith* forms a column in the central part of the stem, and the *medullary rays* radiate from the pith towards the bark.

The pith is looser in texture, and is composed of shorter cells than the wood. The shape and size of the column vary considerably in different trees. In some, *e.g.*, the yew, it is very thin; in others, *e.g.*, the elder, it occupies a considerable space.

The *medullary rays* or "*transverse septa*" are composed of flat cellular tissue, which forms thin vertical plates radiating towards the bark. During the first year of the growth of the tree, these rays originate in the pith, divide the patches of wood and bast, and reach as far as the bark. In subsequent years they are formed in connection with the new wood, not with the pith, and they extend into the bark. The medullary rays are the medium by which the pith and the wood are brought into communication with the bark. They also divide the wood into wedge-shaped bundles. They are seldom so straight and regularly disposed as is represented in the diagram (Fig. 1), but are generally more or less curved, and they often branch out obliquely. They vary considerably both in number and appearance in different trees, and thus, like the vessels, they serve as a guide to the recognition of different kinds of wood. For example, *oak* is easily known by the smoothness and glossiness of its broad medullary rays when these are seen in radial section. This gives to oak timber the beautiful figured appearance called "*silver grain.*" The beech has also long, broad medullary rays. The maple is distinguished by the fineness and number of its medullary rays.

Different kinds of wood known by the character of the medullary rays.

In the greater number of loose-fibred, broad-leaved trees, the rays are very narrow, and scarcely distinguishable by the

naked eye. This is also the case with needle-leaved trees, the rays of which are extremely numerous.

*The cleavage
of wood.*

The medullary rays affect to a considerable extent the ease or difficulty with which wood may be split. As a general rule, timber is easily split if it has broad rays like the oak and the beech, or if the rays, though numerous, are straight and narrow like those of the fir and the pine. Other circumstances, however, may determine the greater or less resistance which any given timber presents to cleavage.

The Sap.

Next to the wood the sap is the most important element in timber. Its chief constituent is water, which holds in solution various organic and inorganic substances, but its composition undergoes changes in the course of circulation through the different parts of the tree.

The sap materials are absorbed by the roots, and as *crude*, or *ascending sap*, are carried by the still active cells of the sap-wood to the leaves. Here, through the influence of light and air, the crude sap is changed and made fit for the nourishment and growth of the tree, and is called *elaborated sap*. From the leaves it descends in the bast tubes to the cambium, where the new wood and bast are formed.

*The organic
constituents
of the sap.*

Amongst the organic substances which the sap holds in solution may be named, starch, sugar, colouring matter, tannic acid, and albuminoids. The latter render it very liable to fermentation, and when this takes place the wood decays. This is the reason why timber, felled when the sap is circulating, and allowed to lie unbarked, readily becomes "sour." It also explains why sap-wood decays more quickly than heart-wood.

When wood is burnt the *inorganic* constituents remain in the ashes.

Sap also contains substances which are not required for the growth of the tree, but which occupy space and channels

in the wood. Amongst these substances are the volatile oils, which are found chiefly in needle-leaved trees, and of which *turpentine* is the most important. The *resin* or *gum* found in needle-leaved trees is also formed from these oils. *Tannic acid* is found in a great many trees, especially in the bark. It is known by its acrid taste, and it abounds chiefly in the oak, the fir, and the alder. When fresh timber in which there is a great deal of tannic acid is split or sawn, the acid makes the polished edge of the tool become blue-black in colour.

*Turpentine,
resin, gum,
and tannic
acid.*

The destructive effect of the albuminoids of the sap is counteracted by the turpentine, resin, and tannic acid.

Water Capacity.

The sap, as stated above, consists chiefly of water; and, as it circulates in the sap-wood, it follows that the latter contains more water than the heart-wood, and more in spring than in the height of summer. As a general rule the water contained in unseasoned wood is about 40 to 50 per cent. of the weight of the wood. In unseasoned ash and beech it is 20 to 30 per cent.; in loose-grained oak, hornbeam, maple, elm, Scotch fir, and spruce fir, 30 to 40 per cent.; in the looser fibred trees in which sap abounds, *e.g.*, the alder, the lime, the willow, and the aspen, 40 to 50 per cent.

The presence of water has generally a hurtful effect upon timber, as is shown in what follows.

B. The Changes which Wood undergoes.

The changes to which wood is subject are partly *mechanical* in their nature, consisting of alterations in the water capacity, and consequent alterations in shape; partly *chemical*, caused chiefly by the decomposition of the sap, which finally leads to the decay of the wood.

I. Changes in the Water Capacity, and the changes in form which are thereby produced.

Newly felled timber contains, as has been said, a large proportion of water—sometimes as much as 50 per cent. of its own weight. After lying for some time in a dry and airy place, it loses about half its amount of water by evaporation. Sawn or split wood, dried for a year or two under cover, still retains 10 to 15 per cent. of water, and only by continuous application of heat, or drying in an oven, can the water in timber be completely expelled.

Changes in the volume of timber.

During the process of drying, timber decreases in volume or *shrinks*. If exposed again to moisture it increases in volume or *swells*.

If any given piece of timber were uniform in texture throughout, and if no obstacles in any direction were presented to its expansion, the only result of shrinking or swelling would be alteration in volume; there would be no change in form. This, however, is seldom the case. Generally speaking, the texture of the wood varies in different parts of the same piece. Again, it is often used under conditions which do not permit it to shrink or swell freely in all directions; consequently, it shrinks or swells more in one place than in another.

When one part of a piece of timber shrinks more rapidly than an adjacent part, the wood *cracks*. If, on the other hand, one part swells more than another, or if the adjacent part meets with some obstacle to its expansion, the timber changes in shape—it becomes *warped*.

Shrinkage in different directions.

The shrinkage of timber stands in close connection with the amount of water contained. The more water it gives off while drying, the more it shrinks. Similarly the warmer and drier the air in which it is placed, the greater the shrinkage.

Some kinds of wood shrink more than others, and the same kind of wood shrinks differently in different directions.

All wood shrinks least in the direction of the fibres' length, and generally so very little that the difference need not be taken into consideration. But the difference caused by shrinking is very great across the fibres, and in *tangential section* it is two or three times greater than in *radial section*, or in the plane of the medullary rays. The sap-wood, which contains more water than the heart-wood, always shrinks more than the latter.

The following table, taken from "Karmarsch's Technology," shows the results of experiments made on a number of trees, to ascertain to what extent their timber shrinks. It must be observed that (1) the experiments were made with thin pieces of wood; (2) that the figures are understood to represent the difference between wood which is either quite green or saturated with water, and that which has been thoroughly well seasoned; and that, therefore, (3) the shrinking of partially seasoned wood *is considerably less* than is stated in the table. (The same applies of course to the swelling of such wood, when it is again exposed to moisture.)

The last column gives the average degree of shrinkage across the fibres.

Shrinkage of Timber.

Name of tree.	Degree of Shrinkage.			
	In length. Per cent.	Across the fibres in the direction of—		Average across the fibres. Per cent.
		The medullary rays. Per cent.	The annual layers. Per cent.	
The common alder	0.369	2.91	5.07	3.99
The elm	0.124	2.94	6.22	4.58
The apple	0.109	3.00	7.39	5.19
The common ash (young)	0.821	4.05	6.56	5.30
The common birch	0.222	3.86	9.30	6.58
The common beech	0.200	5.03	8.06	6.54
The hornbeam	0.400	6.66	10.90	8.78
Ebony	0.010	2.13	4.07	3.10
The oak (young)	0.400	3.90	7.55	5.72
The oak (old)	0.130	3.13	7.78	5.45
The Scotch fir	0.120	3.04	5.72	4.33
The spruce fir	0.076	2.41	6.18	4.20
The lime	0.208	7.79	11.50	9.64
The common larch	0.075	2.17	6.32	4.24
The maple	0.072	3.35	6.59	4.97
Mahogany	0.110	1.09	1.79	1.44
Lignum vitæ	0.625	5.18	7.50	6.34
The pear	0.228	3.94	12.70	8.32
The rowan	0.190	2.11	8.88	5.49
The common walnut	0.223	3.53	6.25	4.89

General
results
afforded by
the above
table.

As is seen from the above table, the degree of shrinkage in the direction of the length of the wood is so slight that it may be left entirely out of consideration. In the direction of the breadth, however, it varies from 2 per cent. to 9 per cent. In radial section, the general average is 5 per cent.; for fir and pine 3 per cent.; for birch 4 per cent. In tangential section, where shrinkage is *greatest*, it varies from 2 per cent. to 13 per cent., the general average for wood in common use being 7 per cent.; for fir and pine 6 per cent.; for birch 9 per cent.

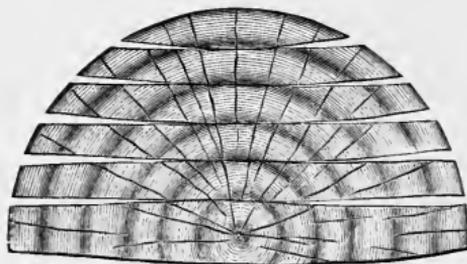


Fig. 4. Shrinkage in planks.

When a tree stem is sawn up into planks by parallel longitudinal cuts, the planks shrink as is shown in Fig. 4. The broadest portion shown, which includes the pith, shrinks least in breadth, most in thickness; least nearest the pith, most near the sides. The outermost plank, however, shrinks most in breadth—in the direction of the annual layers—and least in thickness. The planks lying between shrink differently on different sides, and become concave to the pith, and convex on the other side.

Of trees in most general use, beech, lime, hornbeam, and pear shrink *most*; birch, apple, white-beam, walnut, ash, and oak shrink considerably; alder, maple, Scotch fir, elm, spruce fir, and larch shrink in a *medium degree*. Mahogany shrinks least of all timbers.

Cracks occur in timber, because, as indicated above, it is seldom uniform in texture, and it is therefore liable to shrink in different degrees during seasoning. The parts nearest the sap-wood shrink more rapidly than the heart-wood, and cracks, which run almost invariably in the direction of the medullary rays, are the result. The more rapidly wood dries the more it cracks, consequently *timber should always be dried very slowly to prevent the formation of cracks*. If it is tolerably uniform in texture, it may, with proper treatment, be kept entirely free from cracks.

The *swelling*, or expansion of timber, takes place when it is exposed to damp air or water, and is in direct relation to its shrinkage. When a piece of dried wood is immersed in water, it swells until it occupies the same volume as it occupied in its fresh condition, after which no further expansion takes place. Its amount of water, however, and consequently

its weight, are greater than in its fresh condition, because the vessels originally filled with air are now filled with water.

The *warping* of timber depends on differences in the nature of its texture, and on other circumstances which cause changes in form both when it shrinks and when it swells. For example, a plank will become twisted or curved if one side only is exposed to the sun without being turned. Thin, flat pieces of wood become convex or concave, according as one or other side is exposed to damp or to drying influences.

II. Means of preventing Cracks and Warping.

The means taken to keep timber as far as possible from cracking or warping during the process of seasoning, are very various. They are partly connected with the treatment of the wood when it is cut up into timber, and partly with its treatment for any special purpose.

1. Seasoning.

When wood should be cut down.

Trees should be felled when the sap is down or at rest. The best time is from the the middle of December to the end of February. Too much stress cannot be laid upon the importance of felling timber at the right time, for if felled at the wrong season, it will contain too much sap, which will make it very difficult to dry, render it much more liable to swell or shrink, and increase the risk of its becoming worm-eaten. In the case of needle-leaved trees excess of sap gives a bluish tinge to the surface of the timber.

Wood should be dried slowly.

The more slowly timber is dried the less it cracks, and timber felled at the proper season and allowed to *dry slowly* cracks very little. Barked timber, which dries more quickly than unbarked, often cracks so widely that it is quite unfit for slöjd-work. When the bark is left on, the cracks may be numerous, but they will be small. Thick pieces crack more than thin pieces; logs or round wood more than split wood;

sap-wood more than heart-wood. Care should be taken during seasoning *that the air has free access to the wood on all sides*. Wood which has been split with the axe is apt to crack at the ends; this may be prevented by pasting paper over them. Portions of timber containing the pith and the adjacent annual layers, always crack; such pieces are therefore unavailable for work. When round timber is split in order to facilitate seasoning, it should be divided through the pith.

Boards or planks are best dried in a drying shed, where fresh air can circulate freely round each piece. The best way is to place the boards on their edges, with sufficient space between, taking care that they are not twisted in any way. If they are piled one on the other, pieces of dry wood should be placed between them, in order to separate them. For obvious reasons, none of the timber should touch the ground.

Natural seasoning or seasoning by exposure to the air.

Timber which has been felled at the proper time, takes no harm from exposure to a little rain in spring and early summer, provided always that the air has free access, so that it may dry again quickly. Indeed, timber usually dries very rapidly out in the open air in early summer. The rain helps to wash out the sap, and the timber is thereby rendered more durable when thoroughly dried.

When wholly or partially finished planks are laid by for future use, care must be taken that they do not lie one close upon the other, but that both sides are fully exposed to the air, to facilitate further drying and prevent warping.

In the early stages of seasoning, evaporation goes on with tolerable rapidity, but afterwards it takes place more slowly, and timber must be kept in a dry and airy place for two or three years before it can be considered *fully* seasoned. Timber is said to be *seasoned* when the quantity of moisture it contains coincides with that contained in the atmosphere.

When timber can be said to be seasoned.

As has been said above, the amount of water in timber

seasoned as indicated, never falls below 10 per cent. of its weight. To decrease the water still further, it is necessary to dry the timber in ovens constructed for the purpose, or in heated air, or else to keep it for a long time in a warm place.

*Influence of
the sap on
seasoning.*

Drying expels water only, not the essential elements of the sap, some of which part with great difficulty from water, and also take it up again with great readiness when the timber is once more exposed to moisture. These properties of the sap make seasoning much more difficult than it would otherwise be, and retard the process considerably in wood which abounds in sap—*e.g.*, beech, birch, oak, and walnut.

*Removal of
the sap.*

To overcome this difficulty, the sap may either be removed altogether, or its action may be neutralised. The first is accomplished by immersing the wood in cold water for some time, or in boiling water for a shorter time; or, what is still better, by *steaming* it. In the second case the timber is impregnated with substances calculated to counteract the destructive effects of the sap—*e.g.*, a solution of common salt, vitriol, chloride of zinc, etc. These methods can, however, only be mentioned here incidentally, as any detailed description would be entirely beyond the limits of this work.

2. Precautions necessary to prevent Warping and Cracking under special conditions.

As shrinkage is greater in tangential than in radial section, the wood for any special purpose ought to be sawn out or split in the direction of the radii of the stem, in order that the article may the better preserve its form and size. There are, however, some practical difficulties which render it impossible to carry out this principle in all cases.

*Jointing
pieces of
wood.*

Uniformity of texture, and consequently less tendency to crack or warp, is more easily secured in small pieces of timber than in large pieces, and consequently it is usual in the construction of articles to employ smaller pieces of wood than

are required, and to joint them together; and these pieces may often, without any disadvantage, be chosen from different kinds of wood, and may have their fibres running in different directions. Hence it is better in making a broad plane surface to select planks which have been divided in two, than to make it of whole planks. Planks containing the heart-wood nearest the pith which is generally cracked, are always divided in two to get rid of this portion.

Jointing also permits large plane surfaces to shrink without injury to parts of the work already completed. For example, blackboards, the panels of doors, etc., which are set into a groove in a frame, are thus permitted to shrink without cracking. Table-tops are strengthened by blocks which fit into a groove in the framing, and are glued to the under part of the top. Broad pieces of wood are furnished on one side with clamps, the fibres of which run at right angles to those of the broad piece, and which are inserted in such a way that the wood of the broad piece can shrink without hindrance.

Frames and panels.

III. The Decay of Timber.

After vital action ceases in a tree, its substance, like that of other organic bodies, undergoes a process of decomposition, which sooner or later terminates in the total *decay* of the wood. Decay takes place very rapidly if the timber is exposed to alternations of moisture, air, and heat.

The wood fibres themselves have a high degree of durability, especially if the sap, which is the prime cause of decay, has been removed. Some of the constituents of the sap, *e.g.*, starch and sugar, neither hasten decay nor retard it, while others, *e.g.*, tannic acid and resin, counteract it. It is the albuminoids which are the cause of decomposition, and the sap-wood in which they abound is the part which decays most rapidly.

The *decay of timber* is caused, in the first instance, by the fermentation of the sap, which in this state soon acts injuriously on the wood-fibres. The first sign of this is a *Blue surface.*

bluish tinge on the surface of the wood. Timber which has assumed this bluish tinge is not only less durable and strong, but it is also extremely difficult to work. Though the fermenting elements dry in the wood cells, they do not therefore lose their power. They remain dormant merely, and the application of moisture after the lapse of time is sufficient to wake them into activity. Hence, timber which is exposed to alternations of heat and moisture may very soon acquire a "blue surface," especially if kept where ventilation is deficient.

Dry rot.

If the process of decay goes on further, fungi almost always make their appearance. One of the most destructive forms in which they appear is known as "dry rot."

*Attacks
of insects.*

Timber is also destroyed by insects or worms, which bore their way through the wood, and often reduce the inner portion completely to dust before any signs of destruction appear on the outside. Wood which is rich in sap, *e.g.*, birch and alder, is most liable to such attacks; beech is less liable; while the elm, the maple, and resinous needle-leaved trees, are seldom attacked.

Means of Preventing Decay.

As the decomposition of the sap is the real cause of the decay of wood, the means taken to prevent decay are directed either towards the retardation of this decomposition or to the complete expulsion of the sap, *e.g.* :

- 1.—The timber is cut down during the season of the year when there is least sap in the stem.
- 2.—The timber is seasoned as thoroughly as possible, in circumstances which permit free access and circulation of air, and is protected not only during seasoning but afterwards, from alternations of moisture and dryness.

The growth of fungi is prevented by exposure to light, and continuous and uniform ventilation.

- 3.—The wood, after it has been made into articles, is preserved from damp by varnish, oil paint, etc.
- 4.—The sap is got rid of by steeping the timber in water or steaming it in ovens.

It is to be observed, however, that in this way the constituents of the sap which *contribute to the durability* of the wood, *i.e.*, resin and tannic acid, are also removed.

5. The timber is impregnated with some substance in solution which neutralises the effects of the sap.

The two last named processes are not used for slöjd timber.

In conclusion, it may be added that when the sap is removed entirely, or when the timber is impregnated with some neutralising substance, it does not become worm-eaten. When insects attack wood which has not been treated in one of these ways, it is almost impossible to extirpate them. It has been recommended to apply an acid, *e.g.*, muriatic acid, or a solution of camphor to the worm-eaten holes; but this is, generally speaking, not practicable, and it is, moreover, not a complete cure.

C. Different kinds of Wood.

I. Comparison of the Qualities of different kinds of Wood.

The chief qualities of timber are:—*strength, the ease or difficulty with which it is split, hardness, toughness, elasticity, texture, colour and smell, weight, durability, and its capacity for shrinking and swelling.* The two last mentioned qualities have already been taken up.

It is obvious that most of these qualities depend not only on the kind of tree from which the timber is obtained, but also on many incidental circumstances, such as climate and soil, the age of the tree, the season of the year when it was

cut down, subsequent treatment, etc. It is therefore hardly possible to make any general statements regarding them which shall hold good in all cases.

1. The **strength of timber** is shown by its power of resistance to *pressure, rupture, tearing, and twisting*.

The oak and the Scotch fir present the greatest resistance to *pressure*. The oak, the ash, the spruce fir, and next after them the Scotch fir, the larch, and the aspen, resist *rupture* best. In this respect the beech and the alder are not so strong. The oak and the ash, and after them the beech, the spruce fir, the Scotch fir, and the elm, present the greatest resistance to *tearing*.

2. The **ease or difficulty with which different kinds of wood may be split**. By this is meant the greater or lesser ease with which timber may be divided by a wedge-shaped tool in the direction of the length of the fibres. It is closely related to the quality of the fibres and the manner of their distribution. Wood which has grown quickly has long straight fibres, is free from knots, and is easily split. "Cross-grained" wood, the fibres of which twist and cross each other, and the wood of roots and of branches with knotty excrescences, is difficult to split. Wood from the lower part of the trunk nearest the roots is the most difficult of all to split.

When the medullary rays are large and long as in beech and oak, or numerous and fine as in needle-leaved trees, timber is easily split in radial section, but all timber is harder to split in tangential than in radial section.

The following timbers are *difficult to split*:—figured birch, hornbeam, elm, maple, and white-beam.

The following are *easy to split*:—ash, beech, alder, oak, aspen, Scotch fir, spruce fir, lime, poplar, and chestnut.

Old knotty oak, however, may present great difficulty.

3. The **density or hardness of timber** is shown in the resistance it offers to the tools with which it is worked. It is impossible to give definite statistics on this point, because

it depends so much on circumstances, *e.g.*, the varieties of texture in the same tree, the nature and arrangement of the fibres, the degree of moisture, the presence of resin, etc., etc. : the general rule, however, holds good, that close-grained timber with high specific gravity is hard (it being understood that comparisons are always made with seasoned wood). Seasoned timber is harder than green timber. Green heart-wood is harder than sap-wood. Resinous heart-wood is very hard, and this is also true of timber which has fine annual layers, as is shown especially in the extremely hard resinous knots often seen in planks.

The resistance which timber presents to the *axe* is greatest at right angles to the length of the fibres, and it decreases in proportion as the angle becomes more acute. It is least when the blade of the axe is parallel with the direction of the fibres' length, as in *splitting*.

Resistance to the axe and the saw.

The *saw*, on the other hand, works by *tearing* the fibres, and consequently it meets with most resistance in loose-textured timber with long tough fibres. Such timber makes the edge of the saw uneven. In close-grained timber with short fibres the saw works easily, and the edge keeps more even. Consequently, for heavy close-grained timber the saw does not require to be set so much. In certain kinds of timber moisture increases the toughness of the fibres, and on this account unseasoned timber is more difficult to saw than dry wood.

The *hardness* of timber is very important in all cases where it is exposed to blows, concussions, and general wear and tear.

For ordinary purposes the hardness of any piece of wood may be tested by cutting it with a knife.

The hardest timbers of all are *lignum vitæ* and ebony. The ordinary kinds of timber may be classified as follows :

Hard : hornbeam, maple, apple, pear, oak, and beech.

Medium : ash, elm, white-beam, walnut, birch, lime, and chestnut.

Soft: Scotch fir, spruce fir, larch, alder, aspen, and poplar.

As has, however, been indicated above, spruce fir with fine annual layers and resinous Scotch fir are often very hard, and they might thus find a place in the higher class.

4. The toughness and elasticity of timber. A piece of timber which may be bent without breaking, and which does not resume its former shape when the bending force is removed, is said to be *tough*; if it does resume its former shape, it is said to be *elastic*. Generally speaking, both these qualities co-exist in all timber, but one is usually more predominant than the other, according to the kind of wood. Thus some timbers are said to be elastic and others tough.

Unseasoned wood is tougher than dry wood, and what it gains in elasticity during seasoning it loses in toughness. Damp heat increases toughness; hence hoops and sticks are "steamed" in order that they may be bent.

As a general rule light timber is tougher than heavy timber, roots are tougher than stems; sap-wood is tougher than heart-wood, and young timber is tougher than old.

The toughest timbers are the following:—hornbeam, elm, ash, aspen, birch, juniper, hazel, osier, maple, and white-beam.

Lime, alder, beech, and the heart-wood of oak are only moderately tough.

Elasticity is increased by seasoning, and is generally great in heavy timbers. It is of great importance in the manufacture of many articles, *e.g.*, masts, oars, wooden springs, the handles of spades, axes, hammers, etc.

The following timbers are *elastic*: elm, ash, aspen, oak, spruce fir, birch, maple, and poplar.

Hornbeam, alder, and Scotch fir are less elastic.

5. The texture, colour and smell of timber. Knowledge of these qualities is very important in connection with the recognition of different kinds of timber, and in estimating their value.

By *texture* is understood the way in which the vessels, fibres, medullary rays and annual layers are *woven* or connected together. (See fig. 1).

Wood as it appears in cross section is said to be **end way of the grain**; as it appears in radial and tangential section—parallel with the fibres—it is said to be **length way of the grain, or with the grain**; and as it appears when we look across the fibres at right angles to their length, it is said to be **across the grain**.

We distinguish between *coarse* and *fine* texture according to the *quality* of the fibres, vessels, medullary rays and annual layers, which, taken all together, give to wood its characteristic appearance. Similarly we speak of *long-fibred* and of *short-fibred* texture, according as the wood “works” with long or short shavings. *Coarse and fine texture*

The colour of wood varies from *white* to deep *black*, with many intermediate shades of yellow, red, brown, etc., depending on the kind of tree. It varies not only in different kinds of timber, but in the same kind of timber, and even in the same tree. As has been said above, the heart-wood is always darker than the sap-wood. Certain kinds of timber, again, *e.g.*, oak and mahogany, become darker with time. *Different colours of wood.*

Our ordinary timbers are whitish, yellowish, brownish or reddish, and are not so highly coloured as tropical timbers, some of which are very striking in colour.

The *smell* peculiar to many kinds of timber is a mark by which they may sometimes be recognised. This characteristic smell does not proceed from the wood itself, for it has none. It is due to the sap, and is always strongest in fresh sappy wood; though seasoned timber sometimes has a very decided smell, which is often quite unlike that of the unseasoned wood. Needle-leaved trees have a strong smell of turpentine, and certain broad-leaved trees, *e.g.*, the oak, often smell of tannic acid. Many trees have an agreeable smell, *e.g.*, the cedar, juniper, the camphor-tree, etc. The smell of some *The smell of wood due to the sap*

timber remains in it for a long time, and communicates itself to food kept in vessels made of it.

A *musty smell* in timber is a sign of decay.

6. **The weight or specific gravity of timber** is very variable, depending as it does on a number of different circumstances. Hence it is impossible to give such definite statistics under this head as can be given in the case of metals and many other substances. We have to take into consideration the closeness or the looseness of the fibres, which determines the hardness or density of the wood; the presence of more or less sap; the climate and soil in which the tree has grown; its age; its different parts; the degree of seasoning, etc.

Specific gravity of the cellular tissue.

The specific gravity of *wood* properly so called, *i.e.*, of the cellular tissue which composes it, is very similar in all timbers, and even in the lightest kinds it is greater than that of water. Nevertheless, most timbers, owing to their porous nature, are lighter than water, and float in it. This is the case with all our indigenous trees after seasoning. A warm climate produces heavy timber; and the heaviest timbers, such as ebony and lignum vitæ, are found in the tropics.

The presence of water is the circumstance which most affects the weight of timber. All timbers are heavier when newly felled than after seasoning. Hence, in determining the specific gravity of different kinds of timber, we must assume that the timber is fully seasoned.

The *average* specific gravity of the most common kinds of timber is given as follows by competent authorities:—

	NEWLY FELLED.	SEAS- ONED.		NEWLY FELLED.	SEAS- ONED.
The Hornbeam ...	1.08	0.72	The Spruce Fir ...	0.73	0.47
The Common Alder ...	0.82	0.53	The Lime ...	0.74	0.45
The Elm ...	0.95	0.69	The Common Larch ...	0.76	0.62
The Apple ...	1.10	0.75	The Maple ...	0.90	0.66
The Common Ash ...	0.92	0.75	The White-beam ...	1.04	0.86
The Aspen ...	0.80	0.49	The Pear ...	1.01	0.72
The Birch ...	0.94	0.64	The Rowan... ..	0.96	0.67
The Common Beech ...	1.01	0.74	The Common Walnut ...	0.91	0.68
The Oak ...	1.10	0.86	Ebony ...	—	1.20
The Com. Juniper ...	1.07	0.61	Mahogany ...	—	0.81
The Scotch Fir ...	0.70	0.52	Lignum vitæ ...	—	1.40

The *absolute weight* per cubic foot in any given timber is ascertained by multiplying the specific gravity given above by 62.5 = the number of pounds in a cubic foot of water.

7. The durability of timber. This and the circumstances which favour it have been touched on in connection with the sap, with seasoning, with decay, and the means of its prevention.

The conditions under which timber is used have the greatest influence on its durability. Thus, timber which is kept *under cover* and protected from moisture is very durable, and may last for many centuries. Some kinds of timber are extremely durable if kept under water. Thus, the oak used in ancient lake-dwellings and bridges, or found in bogs, has been preserved for thousands of years.

The durability of wood under water.

If timber is exposed to *alternations of moisture and dryness*, its durability is diminished; and yet, in most cases, it is precisely in these unfavourable conditions it has to be used.

When wood is least durable.

Hence it follows that it is impossible to give precise details regarding the durability of timber. Under this head all that can be done is to mention the trees which in all circumstances give the most durable timbers, viz.: the *oak*, and resinous, close-grained *Scotch fir* and *larch*. The *elm* comes next to these. If exposed to alternations of moisture and dryness, oak is said to last one hundred years, birch fifteen years, and beech not more than ten. Durability is also mentioned in the description of different kinds of timber, which follows.

The most durable timbers.

II. Characteristics of different kinds of trees.

Here follows an enumeration of the different kinds of wood which are available for slöjd work, together with a condensed statement of their properties, in order that, as far as is possible in a brief description, the reader may be made acquainted with each kind of timber.

[The following kinds of wood can be easily obtained in

England, and are therefore specially recommended :—Scotch fir, spruce fir, alder, birch, beech, oak, chestnut, lime, and poplar. See also p. 254.—TRS.]

1. Needle-leaved Trees.

The **Scotch fir** (*Pinus sylvestris*).—The ripe timber is yellowish white or reddish white. The boundaries of the annual concentric layers are light brown in the heart-wood; white in the sap-wood. It is the heaviest, hardest, and most resinous of all the needle-leaved trees, and has a tolerably strong smell of turpentine. Its resinous, fine-grained heart-wood is very durable.

The **spruce fir** (*Pinus abies*).—The wood is yellowish white. In a longitudinal section it shows dark reddish streaks. It is very elastic, and is easily split with the axe. As it contains a good deal of resin, it resists damp; though, being less resinous than the pine, it is more easily glued. Like the pine, it makes excellent timber. Very hard knots, which loosen and fall out when the wood is seasoned, are, however, of frequent occurrence in this wood.

The **common larch** (*Pinus larix*).—The wood of this tree is reddish, with dark annual layers and white sap-wood. It warps but little, and does not readily become worm-eaten. It is more durable than the Scotch fir and the spruce fir.

The **common juniper** (*Juniperus communis*).—The wood of the young bushes is white, and it deepens from yellow to brown as it increases in age. It is hard, tough, close, strong, and durable, and whenever it can be obtained large enough it is much in request for slöjd articles. The juniper has a peculiar and agreeable smell.

2. Broad-Leaved Trees.

The **hornbeam** (*Carpinus betulus*).—The wood of this tree is white, very hard, heavy, close and very tough. The medullary rays are very little darker than the wood, and are not easily distinguished. They are curved, appearing in a

longitudinal section like narrow inconspicuous flecks. The wood is very difficult to split. It dries slowly and warps easily. It is very durable if kept dry, and is a favourite timber for slöjd work.

The **common alder** (*Alnus glutinosa*).—The wood is whitish or brownish-yellow, often deepening to brown, and in the newly-felled tree light red. The annual layers are difficult to recognise; the medullary rays are rather broad, and brown in colour. The timber is only of medium hardness, and is neither very tough nor very elastic; it splits readily, and does not crack or warp easily. It is very durable if constantly kept wet, but it is of low durability if exposed to alternations in the degree of moisture. If felled at the wrong time it is speedily attacked by worms. Its close and even texture make it good timber for slöjd work.

The **hoary-leaved alder** (*Alnus incana*) furnishes timber which is whiter, finer, and closer than the preceding.

The **elm** (*Ulmus montana*, *U. campestris*).—The colour of the young wood in general, and of the sap-wood in older trees, is whitish-yellow. The old heart-wood is reddish-brown, streaked and veined. The inner boundary of the annual layers is somewhat lighter in colour and looser in texture than the rest, and has visible pores. The medullary rays are very narrow and numerous, giving to this timber in longitudinal section a dotted and streaked appearance. This timber is moderately fine in fibre, tough, hard, given to warp, difficult to split, and not liable to the attacks of worms. Its durability under all circumstances is very great. It is often beautifully marked.

The **common ash** (*Fraxinus excelsior*).—The colour of the young wood is white; of the older, yellowish brown, deepening almost to brown in the heart-wood. The medullary rays are not easily distinguished. The annual layers are generally broad, and, as in the case of the oak, the large pores on their inner edge render them very conspicuous. This

timber is tough, elastic, very hard, easily split, not liable to crack, and, if kept in a dry atmosphere, extremely durable. If exposed to the open air it is of low durability. It is much esteemed for its strength and toughness, and is used with advantage for springs of all kinds, tool handles, etc., etc. The young wood is used for barrel-hoops, etc.

The **aspen** (*Populus tremula*).—The wood is white, with coarse annual rings. It is fine in texture; tough, easily split, and warps but little. It is very durable if kept under cover or in the ground. It is not of much use in slöjd work, and in Sweden it is used chiefly in the manufacture of matches.

[The **poplar** (*Populus*).—The colour of the wood is a yellow or brownish white. The annual rings are a little darker on one side than on the other, and are therefore distinct. The texture is uniform, and there are no large medullary rays. The wood is light, soft, easily worked, and does not splinter. When kept dry it is tolerably durable, and it is not liable to shrink.—TRS.]

The **common birch** (*Betula alba*).—The wood of the young tree is white. Older wood is reddish white in colour. The medullary rays are very narrow and scarcely distinguishable. The timber is tolerably hard, and very tough; it dries very slowly, and swells easily. It is very durable if kept dry, but is of low durability if exposed to the open air, and is very apt to become worm-eaten.

The quality of birch varies very much, and depends greatly on climate and soil. Birch grown in favourable soil is straight in fibre, easily split and easily worked:—Birch grown in dry and stony ground or in marshy places is crooked in fibre and more or less knotty, gnarled and cross-grained, and difficult to split. Timber of this kind is beautifully marked. In most parts of Sweden birch furnishes the greater proportion of the wood used in slöjd, and takes the

place of the beech and the hornbeam of southern Sweden and southern countries.

The **common beech** (*Fagus sylvatica*).—The wood in the young tree is light brown; old wood is very dark. The medullary rays are large, glossy, and dark brown, and the general colour of the wood is uniform. The concentric annual layers are not specially conspicuous, but they are easily distinguished. Beech timber is hard, close, heavy, and easily split, especially in the direction of the medullary rays. It is inelastic and rather brittle. It dries *very* slowly, and warps easily. It is very durable under water and when kept dry, but if exposed to varying degrees of moisture it is the least durable of all timbers. It is highly valued for its hardness, and much used for barrels.

The **oak** (*Quercus robur*).—The sap-wood and the wood in young stems is nearly white. The heart-wood in older trees is brownish. The large pores on the inner edges of the annual layers, and the broad, yellowish brown, frequently glossy, medullary rays are specially noticeable. This timber is peculiarly hard, strong, and durable. It is not affected by alternations in the degree of moisture, and it is in all circumstances the *most durable* of all our timbers. It dries slowly, and is very apt to warp unless thoroughly well seasoned. After being in water—especially salt water—for many years, its colour becomes bluish black. The oak furnishes better timber than any other tree of Northern Europe.

[The **chestnut** (*Castanea vesca*).—The colour of the sap-wood is yellowish white; that of the heart-wood is light to dark brown. The wood of the chestnut resembles that of the oak in colour, but it may easily be distinguished from it by the absence of the broad medullary rays which are found in the oak. The timber is heavy, hard, elastic, and very durable if kept uniformly either dry or wet. If subjected to variations in the degree of moisture it is of low durability.

—Trs.]

The **maple** (*Acer platanoides*).—The wood is white, with very narrow and numerous medullary rays of a faint brown colour, which give it a beautifully “waved” lustrous appearance. The annual layers are inconspicuous. The wood is uniform in texture, hard, strong, tough, and difficult to split; it presents a glossy surface to the plane, and does not crack or warp readily. In consequence of these good qualities, it is much sought after for slöjd timber.

The **white-beam** (*Sorbus Scandica*).—The wood of the young tree is yellowish. Older wood is light brown or reddish in colour. It is frequently speckled or veined. This timber is fine and uniform in texture, hard, close, and very tough. It warps but little, and is much valued as slöjd timber.

The **pear and the apple** (*Pyrus*).—The wood of the young tree is nearly white. Older wood is dark brown, sometimes red in colour, and often streaked. It is very fine and close in texture, hard, heavy and tough. The medullary rays are small, and they and the annual layers are inconspicuous. It can be cut easily in all directions, and does not splinter, owing to the uniformity of its texture.

The wood of the apple tree has a general resemblance to that of the pear, but it is closer, redder, and harder—indeed the apple furnishes one of the hardest timbers. The wood of the wild pear or apple is superior to that of the cultivated varieties. The wood of both trees is much esteemed.

The **rowan** (*Sorbus Aucuparia*).—The wood is whitish or light brown. In some respects it resembles the white-beam, but it is not so good. As slöjd timber it may often rank with the birch.

The **common walnut** (*Juglans regia*).—The wood of the young tree is almost white, loose in texture, and soft. Older wood is brownish grey or dark brown, and is often beautifully marked. It is hard and strong, and generally

close in texture, though, like the oak, it has particularly large pores. The medullary rays are almost invisible. It dries very slowly, and shrinks a good deal. It is one of the most beautiful European timbers, and is extensively used.

The following tropical timbers may also be mentioned :—

Ebony (*Diospyros*).—From Africa and the East Indies. The sap-wood is quite white, the heart-wood generally quite black, though sometimes brownish black with white streaks and flecks towards its inner edge, which detract from the value of the wood. Its texture is so uniform that it is impossible to distinguish the annual layers or the medullary rays. The timber is brittle, but very hard, close and heavy. On account of the three last-named qualities, and its beauty, it is much esteemed, but it is too expensive to be used to any great extent.

Mahogany (*Swietenia Mahogani*).—From Central America and the West Indies. Other kinds of timber are also sold under this name. When fresh the wood is generally reddish or brownish yellow, but it gradually darkens, and finally becomes almost black. It has narrow, rather inconspicuous annual layers, and small but distinctly visible pores. In longitudinal section the figuring of this timber is very beautiful. It has fleck-like or pyramidal markings, with a fine satin-like lustre. It varies much in hardness, weight, closeness, and general texture in different varieties. Mahogany is under all circumstances very durable. It warps but little; shrinks *less* than any other timber; and is never attacked by worms. It is highly esteemed as timber, and is very extensively used.

Lignum vitæ (*Guaiacum officinale*).—From Central America. The wood is greenish or blackish brown, with

yellowish and dark streaks in longitudinal section. It is heavy, resinous, very close-grained, and almost as hard as metal. It is twisted in fibre, very difficult to split, and therefore not easy to work. Its extraordinary hardness and great durability make it valuable in the case of articles which are exposed to much wear and tear.

CHAPTER III.

TOOLS.

A. Choice of Tools.

The tools used in slöjd teaching must be chosen with due regard to the pupil's capacity. They ought to be neither too large nor too heavy, but such as can be easily handled. It might perhaps be considered advisable to use tools slighter in make than those generally employed in slöjd-carpentry, and the question might be raised whether such small tools as are to be found in "children's tool-boxes" should not be procured. Tools of this description are, however, usually too inferior to be taken into consideration at all; and, if specially ordered in a good quality, they would be much dearer than those sold in the ordinary course of trade. This applies particularly to tools made of iron or steel. Moreover, such small tools are particularly difficult to keep in order, because they are very slight and brittle. And further, a little experience in teaching proves that children from eleven to fourteen years of age require tools quite as substantial and durable as their elders. Whether or not a tool is too heavy depends upon the person who uses it, for one child may have the strength required to use a much heavier tool than can be used by another. In connection with this it should be noted, that if children are not accustomed, while receiving instruction, to use and to keep in order the tools used in ordinary life, it will be very difficult for them to manage them when they are older. It may be objected that if children use the ordinary knife, saw, axe, etc., they may easily hurt themselves; but this is quite as likely to happen with "toy tools." Besides, it is the duty of the teacher to insist that the children pay

*Choice of
tools for
slöjd teach-
ing.*

attention to the manner of using the tools, and use them in such a way that they do not hurt themselves.

Size of tools.

Although we maintain that the tools used in slöjd teaching should be of the size generally employed, it does not therefore follow that the *largest size* is to be selected, but rather that the *smallest* should be chosen, such as the little hands of the youthful pupil can efficiently wield without much trouble. The handle of the knife should not be larger than can be grasped, though the blade may be of the usual size. The smoothing plane should be $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches long and $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches broad. The trying plane should not be unnecessarily long; 22 inches is long enough, though the breadth ought to be $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches, or broad enough for an iron of $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches. If the trying plane is narrower, it is difficult to plane a surface of any size, and the smaller tool would occasion more work and trouble than one of the dimensions given above. The handles of chisels and similar tools should not be larger than is necessary. The axe should not weigh more than 2 lbs. The frames of the bow saws should be of the lighter description of those used in carpentry.

As one of the aims of slöjd teaching is to develop the physical powers of the pupil, each separate exercise must lead up to the next in such a way that the pupil proceeds from easier to more difficult work. But the most perfect gradation of exercises arranged on this principle will not ensure success if the teacher does not know how to choose suitable wood for the pupils' work, and does not take care that they have *good tools* in good condition. As we demand of the pupils work well executed and accurate in all its details, we are bound to see that they are provided with suitable wood and good tools.

As regards suitable wood, the reader is referred to Chapter II. It need be merely named here that the wood must be *sound, well seasoned, straight in fibre*, and, as far as possible, *free from knots*.

The tools selected should always be of the best quality, Quality of tools. even if these should prove rather more expensive. Instead of buying a large number of inferior tools at once, a few good ones should be procured. But it is not enough to *buy* good tools, they must be *kept in good order*. Ability to keep tools in order is an *indispensable qualification* in a good teacher of slöjd, for if he lacks skill in this respect his teaching will also lack one of the first conditions of success. Good tools indispensable.

There are two rather complicated tools which are particularly difficult to keep in order, *i.e.*, the *plane* and the *saw*. A great deal of energy is wasted in slöjd teaching if the pupils work with badly set planes or with blunt saws. Hence special care should be bestowed on these tools.

Practice in grinding tools and keeping them in order must Grinding tools. be included in the instruction given. Great demands in this respect must not be made at first, but they may be gradually increased until the pupils, at least towards the end of the course, are able to grind a plane iron and sharpen a saw. If this is expected of the pupils, so much the more must it be demanded of the teacher.

The description which follows attempts to give, to some extent, detailed knowledge of the tools which are used in educational wood-slöjd, together with instructions for keeping them in good condition. The illustrations accompanying the description are taken from selected tools and appliances, and the scale is indicated by the fraction after the name of the figure. Want of space prevents the insertion of complete representations of all the tools, etc. A few illustrations of this kind, particularly of benches and of a cupboard for tools, have been added on separate plates at the end of the book, for the guidance of those who wish to make these articles. The technical names are, generally speaking, those employed in carpentry; but a proportion of the names of tools, exercises, and methods of manipulation, have originated and been adopted in the course of the development of slöjd teaching.

B. Appliances for holding the work.

1. **The bench** is the article most frequently used for holding the work steady during its execution. It is the most indispensable part of the apparatus required for slöjd.

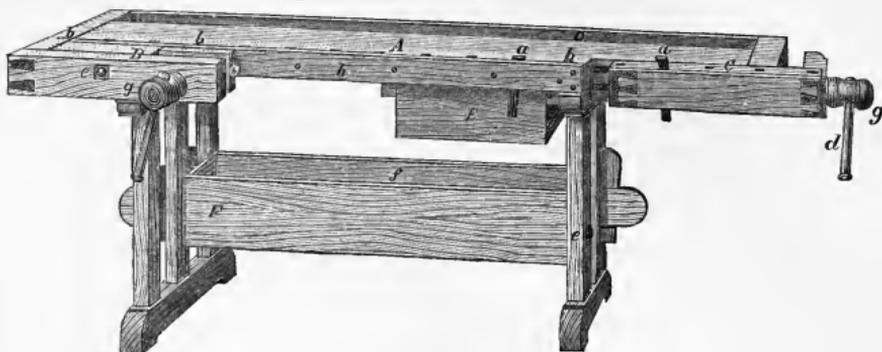


Fig. 5. Bench. $\frac{1}{20}$.

A bench top, *B* front bench vice, *C* back bench vice, *D* bench well, *E* bench drawer or till, *F* front rail of bench box, *aa* bench pegs or hooks, *bb* holes for bench pegs, *c* vice tongue or key, *ee* screw-bolts, *f* back rail of bench box, *gg* vice-screws, *h* front rail of bench.

The *Single Bench* (Fig. 5) is practically a strongly constructed table, heavy enough to stand steady during the work.

A complete bench.

The bench top consists of a strong, hard, close piece of plank about 3 inches thick. For the purpose of holding the work fast it is provided either with one screw or two, arranged in a particular way, called the *back bench vice* and the *front bench vice*. A complete bench (Fig. 5) has both; one of simpler construction (Fig. 8) has only the back bench vice. At one end of the bench-top, to the right of the worker, a rectangular piece is cut away from the anterior edge, its length being parallel to the edge, and where this piece has been cut away a prismatical frame-work is moved by the turning of a wood-screw. The nut into which this screw catches is firmly fixed to the end of the bench top. The frame-work is directed partly by the screw, partly by separate *bolts*, and the screw is held fast by means of a *wedge* or flat pin, which catches like a fork in a groove on the screw.

Back bench vice.

This arrangement is called the *back bench vice*. The frame-work is perforated perpendicularly by one or more square holes, from 4 to 6 inches apart, and a row of similar holes is introduced in the bench top, in a straight line with those in the frame-work. When a plank is to be held in a horizontal position on the bench, a *bench peg* is placed in a hole in the bench vice, and another in a hole in the bench top at a distance corresponding to the length of the plank, and the screw is applied. Care must be taken that the head of the bench peg does not rise above the upper surface of the wood, and also that, during planing, the iron of the plane does not come in contact with the head of the peg, a fault often committed through carelessness by beginners.

The bench pegs (Fig. 6) are rectangular pieces of iron from 8 to 10 inches long, which fit rather loosely into the holes of the bench top, and are provided on one side with a steel spring, in order that they may remain fixed at any desired height. The head of the peg is double-grooved, to hold the work securely. To make room for the head of the peg, the holes in the bench top are usually sufficiently enlarged at the upper end to permit the head to be pushed down, until its top is level with the bench top.

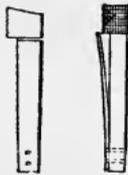


Fig. 6.

Bench Peg. $\frac{1}{16}$. The arrangement of the screw, to the left of the worker, is termed the *front bench vice*. It is much simpler in construction than the *back bench vice*. Fig. 5 shows its construction. A movable piece of wood is placed in front of the end of the screw, called the *vice tongue* or *key*

Front bench vice.

(Fig. 7), partly to hold the work more securely, partly to prevent its being injured by the screw. When a long piece of wood is fastened into the front bench vice for edge-planing, it is ad-

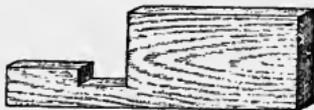


Fig. 7. Vice Tongue or Key. $\frac{1}{16}$. visible to allow the under edge

to rest upon a little block on a swivel, attached to the under side of the bench top. If the screws do not turn easily, the friction may be reduced by rubbing them well with pulverised plumbago.

On the side of the bench farthest from the worker is a trough or channel, called the *bench well*, in which tools not in actual use may be laid. Triangular pieces of wood, firmly attached to the ends of this well, facilitate the sweeping out of shavings, etc.

The different portions of the bench are fastened together by dovetailing, mortising, and iron screws.

The bench top rests upon feet or *rails*, and it is often furnished on the under side with a drawer or till. A similar drawer may be connected with the rails.

The wood used for the bench top should be oak, ash, beech, or hard pine; for the screws, horn-beam or "figured" birch; for the well and the rails, fir or pine.

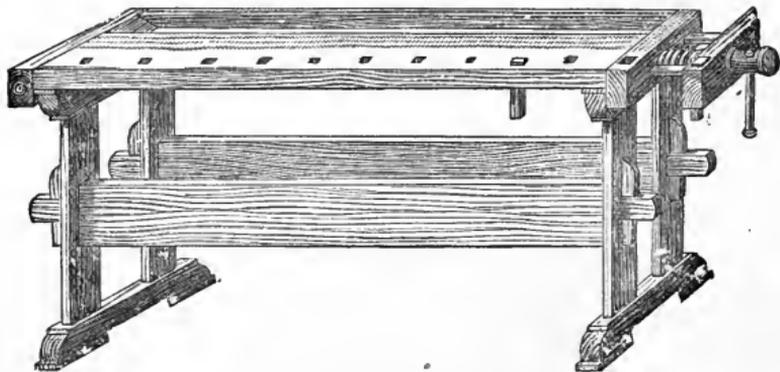


Fig. 8. Single Bench. $\frac{1}{20}$.

Top, 5 feet long by $1\frac{1}{2}$ feet broad. Height, 2 feet 7 inches. Näs pattern.

A simpler and somewhat cheaper bench for one worker is represented in Fig. 8. It takes up little space, and it can be procured for one-half—indeed one-fourth—of the cost of the bench first described. It is furnished with a back-bench vice only, consisting of a piece of wood moving on bolts, and

worked by a screw fixed with a forked *wedge* to the movable front jaw of the vice. The bolts must be firmly inserted in the detached portion of the vice, and must have their anterior ends made fast in a cross-piece; otherwise the movable portion of the vice will not move easily and surely backwards and forwards by means of the screw. To fasten a piece of wood quite steadily in the vice it should be balanced as nearly as possible on the top of the screw. When this is not done, it has a tendency to fall to one side, and if this frequently happens the vice will finally be destroyed. This drawback renders the bench less suitable than the one previously described.

Bench after the Nääs pattern.

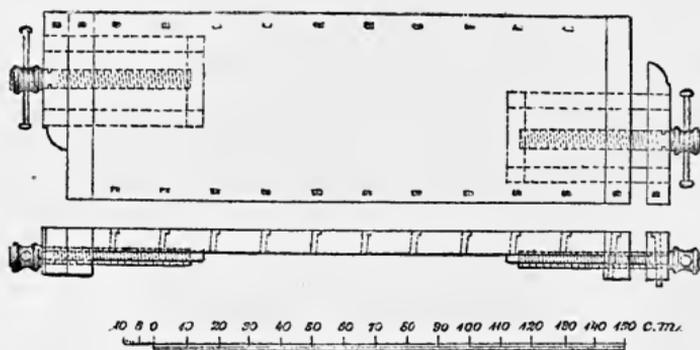


Fig. 9. Double Bench.

The complete bench, represented in Fig. 5, is too large for general use in School-slöjd, the space for which is generally limited. A simpler bench, adapted from Fig. 8, is therefore used, which has a "back-bench vice" at both ends, as indicated in Fig. 9, with a shorter bench-well than is shown in Fig. 5. When this bench is firmly fixed to the floor, two pupils can work at it without disturbing one another.

Adjustable double bench.

Fig. 10 is a bench of English manufacture, well adapted for slöjd work, and is known as R. Trainor's Improved Bench.



Fig. 10. Trainor's Bench.

A. bench top, *B.* tool tray or bench well, *C.* back strip, *d.* tail (or back) bench vice, *e.* side (or front) bench vice, *f.* plane rest or fillet, *g.* Merrill's bench stop, *h, h.* bench pags, *i, i.* joint bolts, *M, M.* fore legs, *N, N.* rear legs, *O.* front bottom rail, *P.* back bottom rail.

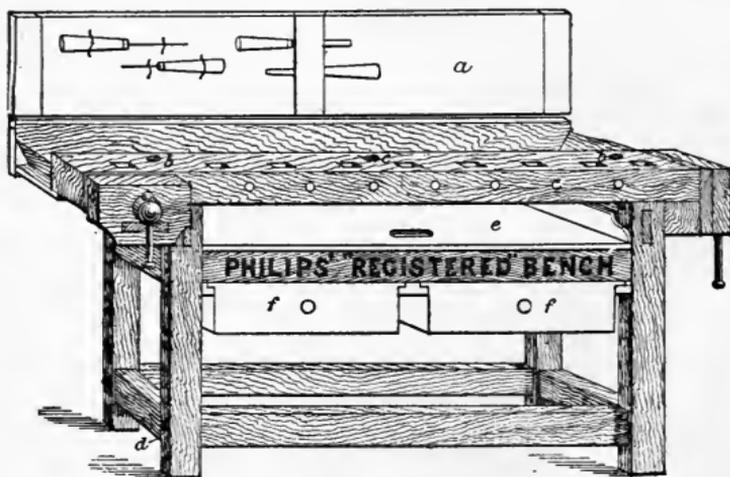


Fig. 10A. Philips' Registered Bench.

a. lid to hold tools (closes and covers bench well), *b.* bench top, *D.* rigid frame fixed with iron bolts, *E.* flag to draw out for holding work in hand, *F.* drawers.

Fig. 10A is a useful bench, also of English manufacture. The lid is arranged to hold tools, &c., and when closed covers the bench-well. The bench can be had either with or with-

For prices of these benches see end of book.

out the lid, and as a single or a double bench. The size of the Single Bench top is 5 feet long, by 1 foot 8½ inches wide. The Double Bench is 5 feet long by 3 feet wide, with 2 end and tail vices. Height 2 feet 6 inches.

The **Holdfast** is a simple appliance which is often used to secure pieces of wood to the bench in sawing, boring, chiselling, etc. The holdfast (Fig. 11), consists of a round iron or steel rod, furnished at the upper end with a strong arm. It is inserted in a hole bored in the bench top, the diameter of which is very little larger than that of the cylindrical portion of the holdfast. The piece of work is laid under the arm, and secured by a stroke

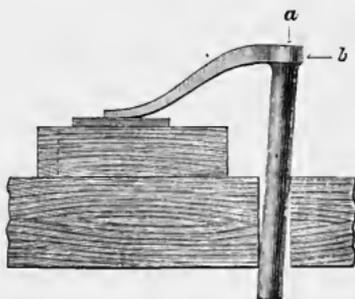


Fig. 11. Holdfast, $\frac{1}{16}$.

from the mallet on the heel, in the direction *a*, and is loosened by a stroke in the direction *b*. The holdfast may therefore serve the same purpose as the back bench vice.

The **shooting board** is a contrivance which may be advantageously used when a partially planed piece of wood has to be squared up at right angles to a plane surface or a straight edge.

The shooting-board (Fig. 12) consists of a piece of hard pine 1½ inches thick, 8 inches broad, and from 2 to 2½ feet long, on one side of which there is a rebate, which serves as a guide to the trying plane when in action. At the further end there is a smooth rectangular block, the inner side of which is carefully secured at right angles to the rebate of the plane rest. Under this plane rest a groove is hollowed out, in order that the shavings may not pre-

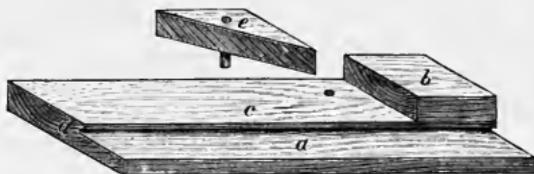


Fig. 12. Shooting-board, $\frac{1}{16}$.

a, Plane rest, *b*, Block for square shooting, *c*, Rest for wood, *d*, Rebate and groove, *e*, Block for mitre shooting at an angle of 45°.

vent the plane from lying close to the rebate during work. Instead of a rebate made in a thick piece of wood, two pieces may be fastened together, a narrower above a broader piece. In this way a rebate will be formed. Before they are fastened together, the under part of the inner edge of the top piece must be cut away so as to form the groove for shavings.

When the shooting-board is in use, it is secured between two bench pegs. The piece of wood which is to be squared is held and pressed against the trying-plane with the left hand, the plane being directed by the right. Care must be taken not to plane anything off the edge of the rebate, or to hurt the fingers.

The shooting-board may also be used for mitre shooting pieces of wood which are to be fastened together at an angle of 45° , by placing before the block for square-shooting a triangular block whose anterior edge forms an angle of 45° with the edge of the rebate. See Fig. 12.

II. Handscrews.

Handscrews are used to secure the work to the bench, and to hold several pieces of work fast while a drawing is being made or while glue is drying. The bench itself, when not otherwise engaged, may be used with advantage in the case last named.

Handscrews are made of wood or of iron, and are of various sizes.

Wooden handscrews (Figs. 13, 14), consist of three straight pieces of wood, two of which are joined to the third on the same side, and at right angles to it. Horn-beam or tough birch is the best wood for the purpose. A strong wooden screw passes through one of the parallel arms and gives the necessary pressure.

As the handscrew is sometimes subjected to a greater strain than the construction just described can bear, it is often strengthened by an iron rod. (See Fig. 14.)

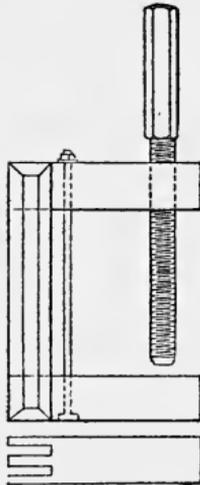
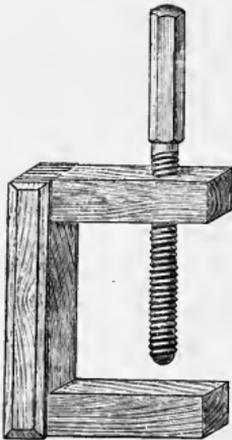


Fig. 13. Handscrew. $\frac{1}{4}$.

Fig. 14. Handscrew. $\frac{1}{4}$.

Fig. 15. Adjustable Handscrew. $\frac{1}{4}$.

When the screw is applied, one hand only should grasp the handle, and the other should take hold of the screw either above or below the nut. Otherwise, if the pressure is great, the screw may break. If the screw should go off the straight during the process, a light blow from the mallet on the lower part will put it right. A piece of wood should always be laid under the point of the screw, to prevent marks on the work.

[The English handscrew (Fig. 16) differs from the Swedish handscrew in having two screws *a a* instead of one. These screws work in opposite directions, through two square wooden cheeks, *b b*.—TRS.]

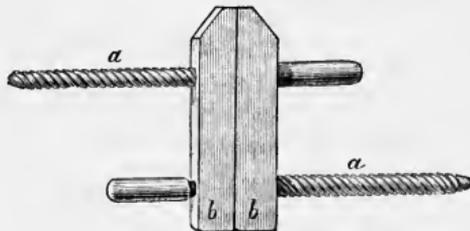


Fig. 16. English Handscrew.
a a screws, *b b* cheeks.



Fig. 17. Iron Handscrew, or Thumbscrew cramp. $\frac{1}{2}$. or Gee Cramp.

Thumbscrew cramps are now made of wrought iron. This gives strength without weight or clumsiness. These screws are very useful, and easily managed. (See Fig. 17).

When broad pieces of wood have to be glued together, and the handscrews already described are not large enough, and the bench is not available, use is made of a screw in which a movable block is substituted for one of the parallel arms. Such screws are called **adjustable handscrews** (see Fig. 15).

C. Setting out.

It is often necessary for accurate workmanship to draw or mark the outlines of the pattern object on the wood, at various stages of the work. This is done by tracing round the outline of the model, by copying a drawing, or by means of given measurements.

The following tools are necessary:—

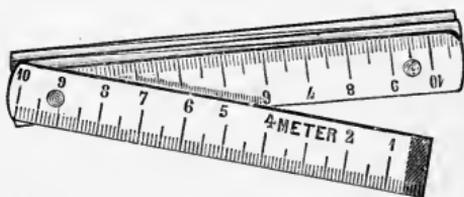


Fig. 18. Folding Metre-measure. $\frac{1}{2}$.

I. The metre-measure for measuring off and subdividing measurements. A rule of hard wood, one metre or half a metre long, divided into centimetres and millimetres, is the best for the purpose. A thin folding rule of strong wood or ebonite may be used for less exact measurements, and is convenient to carry about, but is

not altogether trustworthy, on account of the looseness of its construction, and the gaps at the joints.*

II. In drawing straight lines use is made of an ordinary ruler and a lead pencil, but when great accuracy is required a **marking point** should be used. This consists of a piece of steel, tapering to a sharp point, about 4 inches long and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick, inserted in a handle (Fig. 19).

III. In drawing lines parallel to the edges of a piece of wood, the **marking gauge** is used.

Many different kinds are made, but those generally used agree in the main details. They consist of a piece of wood, the *stock*, which has at least two parallel plane surfaces. A *spindle*, either circular or square in cross-section, passes through a mortise in the stock. At one end of the spindle is a sharp lancet-shaped steel *marker*. Some Swedish marking gauges have two spindles. That side of the stock which is placed against the edge to which the lines drawn are to be parallel, may vary in length, but when lines are drawn parallel to a straight edge (the most usual case), the longer the stock is the better, because this facilitates the accurate management of the tool, and enables even an inexperienced hand to gauge.

(1.) **Marking gauge** with rectangular long stock and cylindrical spindle (Fig. 20). The stock is sawn into at one end as far as the mortise, and to secure the spindle after insertion this end is furnished with a screw, by means of which the spindle is held fast in



Fig. 19.
Marking-point
 $\frac{1}{3}$.



Fig. 20. Marking gauge. Lundmark's patent. $\frac{1}{4}$.

* Where the English system of measurement is followed, a *two foot rule* is used, divided into eighths of an inch on one side, and into sixteenths on the other. The use of the metre-measure is, however, strongly recommended. (See footnote, page 13).—Trs.

the manner indicated in Fig. 20. If a thumbscrew and nut are substituted for this screw, the necessary pressure can be more easily and surely produced. (See Plate X).

(2.) **Marking gauge** (Fig. 21) with rectangular long stock and rectangular spindle. The spindle is held in place by wedges. This is a simple and inexpensive marking gauge, invented by Herr Alfred Johansson, head-teacher at Nääs. It is recommended as a useful and practical tool for school purposes. (See Plate X.)

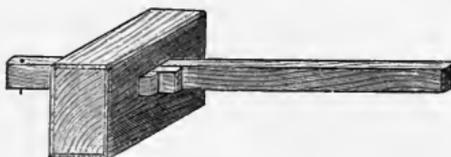


Fig. 21. Marking-gauge. $\frac{1}{4}$.
gauge without difficulty.

The long stock of this marking gauge gives it the advantage already indicated over those hitherto in use, *i.e.*, it enables inexperienced workers to



Fig. 22. English Marking-gauge.
a. Thumbscrew.

The English marking gauge (Fig. 22) differs from the Swedish one in having a thumbscrew *a* on one side of the stock, which

works against the spindle and holds it in position.

The Marker.

The marker must be kept well filed and pointed to secure fine distinct lines, parallel throughout with the edge. The side farthest from the stock should be straight, and as nearly as possible parallel with the side of the stock. The inner side of the marker, on the contrary, should be slightly convex. The marker is thus calculated to cut inwards *away* from the edge, and does not "run off the lines" as a bad marker does, when it meets with a hard layer of autumn wood in cutting in the direction of the grain. With a good marker the gauge should act easily and well without exertion of any kind on the part of the worker.

(3) The cutting gauge has a parallelopiped shaped spindle secured by a wedge (Fig. 23). Instead of a pin-shaped marker it is provided with a thin steel cutter, adjusted by means of a pin. Cuttings more or less deep may thus be made on the surface of the work. This tool is chiefly used for gauging across the grain, and in setting out for grooving and dove-tailing.

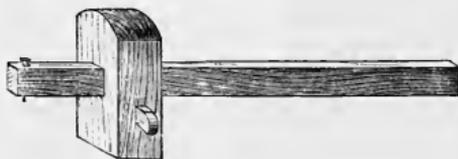


Fig. 23. Cutting Gauge. $\frac{1}{4}$.

In this, as in all marking gauges, it is important that the marker should be inserted in such a way that the inner side, and consequently the point, is slightly inclined outwards from the side of the stock.

IV. Compasses.

1. The compass generally used in slöjd is a simple one made of steel with a hinge. As it is often necessary to maintain the distance between the arms unaltered, this compass is provided with a bow, which is attached to one arm, and which can be secured to the other by a screw. A compass of this kind is called a bow-compass (Fig. 24).



Fig. 24.

Compasses. $\frac{1}{4}$.

When segments of large circles have to be described, beam-compasses are used. In place of the arms of the ordinary compass, these are furnished with trammels, *aa*, united by a cross-piece or beam, *b*, and pointed at one end, where there is a steel pin. One of the trammels is fixed to the cross-piece; the other is movable, and is adjusted by means of a pin.

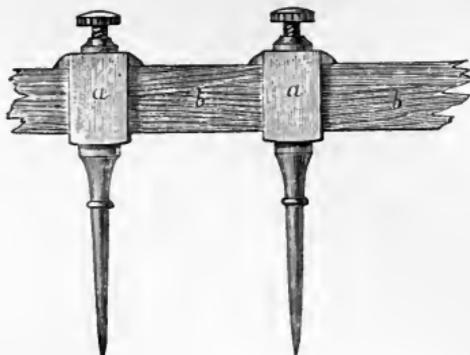


Fig. 25. Trammel Heads, or Beam Compasses.

aa, Trammels, bb, Beam.

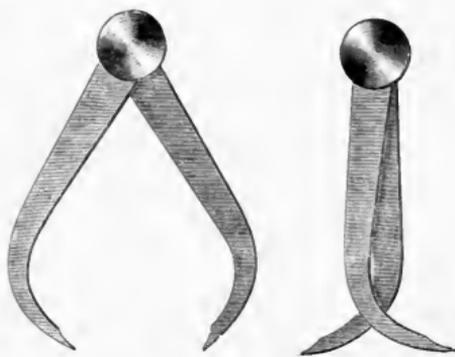


Fig. 26. Caliper Compasses. $\frac{1}{2}$.

turned away from one another (Fig. 26).

2. The Caliper Compass is used to measure the thickness of round or oval objects. This compass has very strong curved arms with points which taper obliquely. The ordinary caliper compass may be used to measure the diameter of a hole, by turning the arms round the hinge until the points are

V. Squares and Bevels.

Squares are used for testing right angles, bevels for testing angles of various sizes.

The Square consists of a short thick piece called the *stock*, with a longer, thinner piece at one end, and at right angles to it, called the *blade*. The stock projects beyond the sides of the blade, and the tool can be easily applied to the straight edge of a piece of wood, that lines may be drawn on the surface at right angles to this straight edge. All the angles of the square, exterior as well as interior, must be perfect right angles. This is not only essential for the operation just described, but also because the square is used for testing solid angles, *e.g.*, the edge of a plank, a corner, etc.

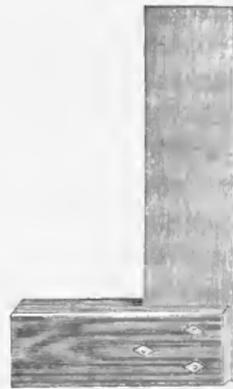


Wooden squares.

Fig. 27. Wooden Square. $\frac{1}{4}$.

Every good collection of tools should include several squares of different sizes, *e.g.*, with blades 6, 8, 12, and 18 inches long.

The square should be made of hard well-seasoned wood, warranted not to warp. To give greater durability the blade is often made of steel, and the wood of the stock faced with brass on the inner side (Fig. 28). Still stronger and more trustworthy squares are made with steel blades and cast-iron stocks. Squares of



Steel squares.

Fig. 28. Square with steel blade. $\frac{1}{4}$.

this kind are particularly useful as *testing squares*, and one ought to be included in every good collection of tools.

To test a square. The blade is laid on the plane surface of a block of prepared wood, with the stock against a perfectly straight edge. Lines, drawn against each side of the blade, are then made on the wood. The square is next

reversed, the stock is placed as before, and the edges of the blade are placed close to the lines previously made. Lines are then drawn once more along the edges of the blade. If these lines coincide, or are perfectly parallel with those made first, the square is correct.

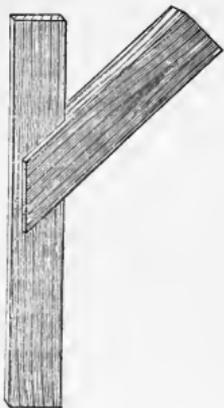


Fig. 29. Set-bevel or mitre-bevel. $\frac{1}{2}$.

2. The **set-bevel** (Fig. 29) consists, like the preceding, of a *stock* and a *blade*, but the latter, which generally extends beyond the end of the stock, is attached in such a way that it forms on one side an angle of 45° , and on the other an angle of 135° , or the complementary angle of a straight angle. It is used when a rectangular corner is made by joining together pieces cut at an angle of 45° . Such pieces are said to be *mitred*.

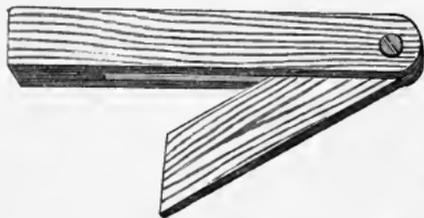


Fig. 30. The Wooden Bevel. $\frac{1}{2}$.

In the **wooden bevel** the blade rotates on a screw in the stock. To secure the blade in any given position the screw is furnished with a nut, by means of which it may be screwed fast. (Fig.

30.)

To test a plane surface.

VI. Winding laths or straight edges. To test the accuracy of plane surfaces, a long, perfectly straight ruler or *straight edge* is used. When this is placed on the surface in various directions, there must be complete contact between it and the surface. A still more delicate method of proof is furnished by the double straight edge, or two straight edges exactly the same (Fig. 31). In applying the test the straight edges are placed one at each end of the piece of wood, and parallel to one another. On careful

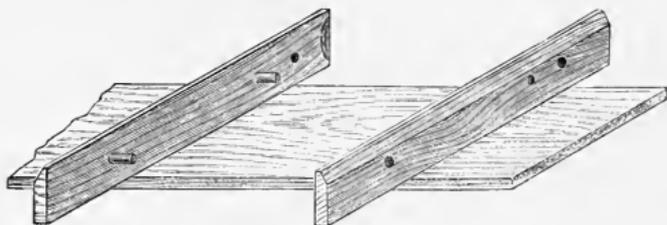


Fig. 31. Winding laths or straight edges. $\frac{1}{2}$.

inspection, if the surface is level the upper edges of the rulers will be found to be in the same plane. The straight edges, when not in use, are held together by a couple of pegs.

The edge of the trying-plane is often used instead of the straight edge, and two trying-planes instead of the double straight edge. See further under "face planing," p. 136.

D. Tools used for cutting up wood and making the articles.

I. Saws.

The saw is an indispensable tool, and in the case of most articles it is the first used. The *blade* is made of thin steel of various breadths, on one edge of which a series of sharp points form the *teeth*. The steel must be soft enough to be acted on by the file, and to admit of the teeth being slightly turned aside without breaking off.

The saw acts by tearing or cutting the fibres of the wood as the teeth of the blade pass over them. The teeth are, therefore, the characteristic part of the saw, and its efficiency depends on their form, size, and quality.

The **shape and size of the teeth** vary considerably in different kinds of saws. The form generally used in wood slöjd is shown in Fig. 32. The form of the teeth is that of

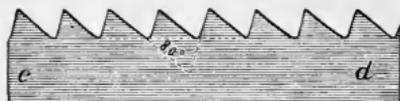


Fig. 32. Teeth of a bow saw for ripping. †.

a scalene triangle, the base of which is formed by the blade. The shortest side forms an angle of 80° - 90° with the base. In the frame saw (Fig. 37, B), the angle

is 90° ; in the bow-saw, the dove-tail saw, etc., it is 80° - 85° .

Form and position of the teeth of a saw.

The teeth of any given saw must always be alike in size and shape, and must always be set at the same angle. The shorter side of the teeth, being nearly at right angles with the blade, is the cutting side, and in working the saw this is the side which should enter the wood. When the saw is drawn back, the more sloping side of the teeth has very little effect upon the fibres, and the saw "goes empty."



Fig. 33. Teeth of a bow-saw for cross-cutting, or wood-saw. †.

The teeth of the bow-saw for cross cutting form an isosceles triangle of 50° between the teeth. A saw of this description cuts equally well backwards or forwards

Length of the teeth.

The space between the teeth must be great enough to leave room for the sawdust until the saw has carried the latter beyond the wood. Now, as the sawdust occupies more space than the wood from which it is produced, the teeth of the saw must be considerably longer than the depth of the cut made each time the saw passes through the wood, and the point only of the teeth must be allowed to cut the wood, to prevent hindrance to their action by an accumulation of sawdust. If the sawdust prevents the free passage of the saw, or if it clings about the teeth, it is either because the teeth are too small, or because too much pressure is laid on the saw.

Why the saw must be set.

It is almost impossible to avoid considerable friction between the blade and the sides of the cut, and this friction is increased by the sawdust which accumulates at the sides

of the blade. It is therefore necessary to give the blade a certain amount of "play;" in other words, *the breadth of the cut must be greater than the thickness of the blade.* This is effected by bending the teeth alternately a little to the one side and to the other, or, as it is termed, by *setting* the saw.

Setting is performed by means of the **Saw-set**, a steel blade $\frac{1}{16}$ inch thick, the edges of which are indented by notches of various breadths.



Fig. 34. Saw-set. $\frac{1}{4}$.

Some English Saw-sets are furnished with an adjustable slide rest. In setting a saw the blade is fastened into **Saw Sharpening Clamps** (Fig. 35) and these are screwed to the bench. One tooth after another is grasped by the notch of the Saw-set best adapted to the thickness of the tooth, and the blade of the Saw-set being held in such a way as to conceal the point of the tooth, the latter is then *turned sharply aside.* It must not, as is sometimes done, be twisted at the same time in the direction of the length of the blade, as this may cause it to break off. Great accuracy is required in the operation, and the setting should never be so extreme that the width of the cut is more than double the thickness of the teeth. If this width is exceeded the saw will not act easily.



To what extent a saw should be set.

Considerable practice and skill are required to set a saw. The points of the teeth should form a line exactly parallel to the length of the blade, but it often happens that some teeth project beyond this line and others fall within it. This fault may be remedied to some extent by drawing the blade between a couple of gougues, fixed points downwards in a piece of wood, with the convex sides facing one another.

Fig. 35. Saw sharpening clamps. One half loosely fastened to the other by means of wood screws. $\frac{1}{4}$. Unevenly set saws.

The blade of the saw is placed between them, teeth upwards, and the points turned from the operator, or in the direction from *d* to *c* (Fig. 32), the handles are grasped with one hand to bring the gouges close together, and the blade of the saw is drawn forwards between them.

Setting
tongs.

In consequence of the difficulty of setting a saw evenly and at a good angle, many different kinds of saw-sets and setting-tongs have been devised. The latter are intended to be adjustable for any desired inclination of the teeth. Some of these tools, however, are not practically useful, and those which are fully adapted for use are generally too expensive for ordinary purposes.

As indicated above, *setting* must not go beyond a fixed limit. Provided that the saw has free passage through the wood, the finer the cut it makes the better; and much less inclination of the teeth is necessary, in the case of dry timber, than in unseasoned or loose-fibred wood.

Saw blades
with thin
backs.

Less setting is also necessary in the case of saw-blades which increase in thickness towards the teeth. These are made in the best manufactories, and are always preferable to blades of equal thickness throughout. So-called *compass saws* often have blades of this kind, and require no setting.

Sharpening
the saw.

Quite as important as the setting of the saw is its *sharpening*, and it is often necessary to perform both operations at the same time.

To *sharpen* a saw, it is secured in the saw-sharpening clamps; and the ordinary kinds of saw used in wood slöjd are sharpened by means of a triangular file (Fig. 36).



Fig. 36. Triangular or Three-square File. $\frac{1}{2}$.*

Care must be taken that the two sides of the file which

* The file represented in the illustration is a single-cut file; but a double-cut file should be used.—Trs.

are to be used form the angle necessary to produce the inclination in the edges of the teeth indicated above. This being secured, *the file is drawn across the blade at right angles to it.* Every indentation must be filed equally deep, or, in other words, the point of each tooth must stand equally high. The row of teeth is next tested with the straight edge, and if any of the teeth stand higher than the others, they must be *topped* or *filed down* with a fine broad file, and then sharpened once more.

Sharpening is begun at the end of the blade, towards which the points of the teeth are turned, or from *c* to *d* (Fig. 32). The degree thus produced on the points is always in the direction to which the teeth are turned, *not away from it.* In the latter case, the saw would be rather blunt. Each tooth must be carefully filed, that its edges may be quite *sharp*, and the cutting side quite *straight*.

Should the saw, after sharpening, be insufficiently set, it must be set again, after which the file must be once more passed over the teeth to remove any irregularities. Generally speaking, setting precedes sharpening.

Sharpening is sometimes performed by passing the file obliquely over the edge of the blade, instead of at right angles to it. The edges of each tooth are thus sharpened obliquely from within outwards (see Fig. 33). The file is first passed obliquely through *every alternative* tooth-space. The saw is then reversed, so that its ends change places, and the remaining spaces are operated on in the same way. This gives a knife-like edge to both sides of the teeth, and makes the saw cut particularly swiftly and well. The common *wood-saws*, some *tenon-saws*, and *hand-saws*, are sharpened in this way.

It need hardly be added that setting and sharpening are not only necessary in the case of new saws, but also as often as the teeth become worn or blunt.

The saws now to be described may be classed in two groups, *i.e.*, *saws with frames*, and *saws without frames*.

The former have the ends of the blade fastened into a frame, the tension of which may be regulated to produce the necessary amount of resistance. In the latter kind of saw

this power of resistance is given by means of the greater breadth and thickness of the blade, or by setting the back of the blade in a binding of metal. This binding is called the saw-back.

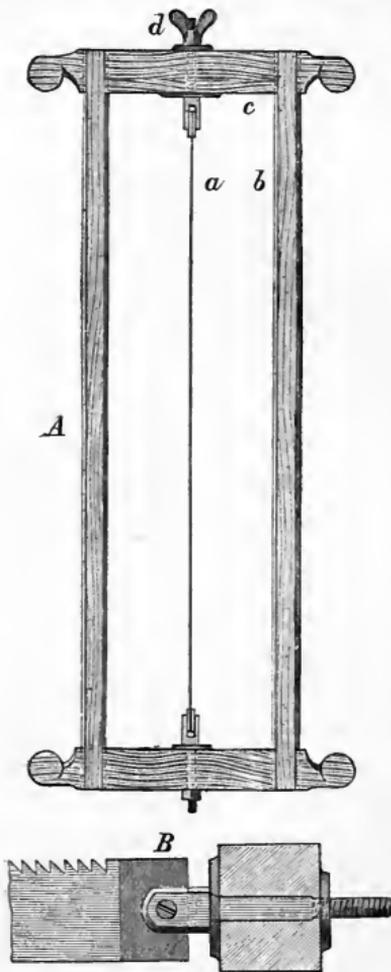


Fig. 37. A. Frame Saw.
 a blade. b side-rail. c top-rail. d winged
 nut and saw-blade attachment. B.
 B. Saw blade end with attachment.

1. Saws with Frames.

1. The Frame Saw (Fig. 37) is the largest saw used in Slöjd. It is used for sawing up planks and other pieces of wood lengthwise into thinner pieces. It is worked by two people, and in a horizontal direction. The blade has from 3 to 4 teeth per inch, and it is fastened into an oblong wooden frame, midway between the side-rails.

The ends of the blade are enclosed in and strengthened by pieces of white-iron, and are fastened by the attached pieces running through each *top-rail*. Tension is produced by turning the winged nut. The cutting side of the teeth is at an angle of 90°.

2. **Bow Saws** (Fig. 38) are of different sizes. They are much used in wood-slöjd, not only in the earlier, but in the later stages of work. Bow saws have all the same kind of frame, consisting of a bar called the *stretcher*, longer than the blade and parallel to it, at each end of which there is either a square mortise or a fork-like notch for the reception of the cross-pieces or *side-arms*. The latter, though carefully fitted in, yet have a certain amount of play at the ends of the stretcher, in order that they may be drawn closer to each other on either side of the stretcher when the saw is tightened. At one end of each side-arm there is a round hole, through which passes a well-fitting *peg* with a handle. This peg is sawn through the middle lengthwise to form a slot for the saw blade, which often extends a certain length into the handle. The blade of the saw is narrower at the ends where it enters the handle. In it are one or two holes, through which the fastening pin runs.

Blades fastened in this way often twist when tightened, and consequently cut badly. This happens especially when the axis of the handle is not exactly in line with the blade. This defect may be remedied by substituting for prolongations of the blade itself, the white-iron attachments (Fig. 39), and securing them in the usual way. The ends of the blade are fastened between the plates of the attachment merely by a screw or nail, in order that the blade may be freely adjusted.

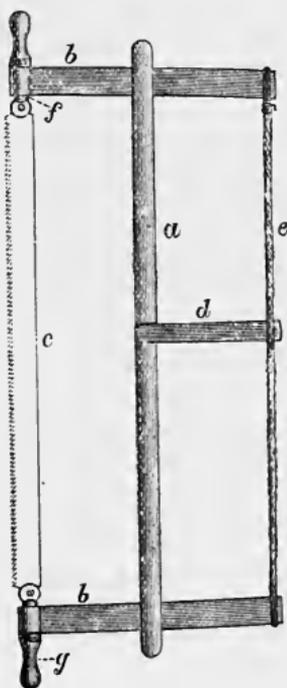


Fig. 38. Broad-webbed Bow-saw.
a stretcher. *bb* side-arms. *c* blade.
d tightener. *e* string. *f* end of blade with attachment.
g handle. *γ*.

The side-arms are connected at the other end by several strands of strong string, which are twisted together by a *tightener*, in order to give the required tension to the blade. When the string is put on, the frame is fastened between the bench pegs.

The stretcher is made of fir or pine; the side-arms of harder wood, *e.g.*, beech or oak. The different parts of the frame are made as light as is compatible with strength, that the saw may not be too heavy to manage with one hand.

Manner of holding the saw.

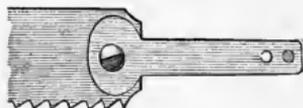


Fig. 39. Saw-blade end, with attachment. $\frac{1}{4}$.

In working, the saw should be firmly grasped by the side-arm just above the handle. In the case of the lighter description of saws, the handle, as well as the lower part of the side-arm, should be held in the hand, and the index finger should steady the blade.

Generally speaking, the blade is fixed obliquely to the plane of the frame; partly that the worker may saw deeply without hindrance from the frame, and partly that he may be able to see the line which the saw is to follow.

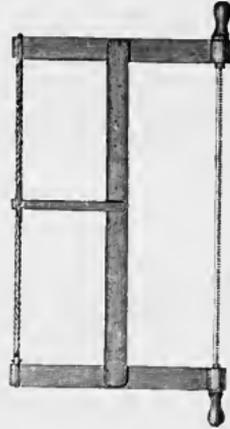
In tightening the blade—which is best done by turning both handles simultaneously—care must be taken that it is perfectly straight. Otherwise a straight cut can hardly be obtained.

Tightening the blade.

If the saw is out of use for any length of time, the tightener should *always be slackened*. When this is not done the side-arms may become twisted.

Bow-saws have different names, depending on the nature of the blade. The "hook," *i.e.*, angle of the teeth is shown in Fig. 32.

A. **The Broad-webbed Bow-saw** is shown in Fig. 38. Its blade is 1 to 1½ inches broad. It is used in numerous cases, *e.g.*, in sawing off long slips of wood, where a straight cut is all that is required. It has 4 to 5 teeth per inch.



B. **The Turn-saw** (Fig. 40). The frame resembles the preceding, but the blade is very narrow—about ¼ inch, or very little more—because it is used to produce curvilinear cuts. The tothing is very fine—7 teeth per inch—and the setting is sometimes less than in the bow-saw, that the cut may be accurate, and not unnecessarily broad.

Fig. 40. Turn-saw. ¼.

Turn-saws, the blades of which are over half an inch in breadth, are also used. These are called *broad-webbed turn saws*.

2. Saws without Frames.

1. **The Hand-saw** (Fig. 41) has a very broad blade, which is narrower at one end, and is provided at the broader end with a convenient handle. The large blade gives it sufficient strength, and this is often increased by the thickness of the blade, which may exceed that of the frame-saw. The teeth are set to cut when the worker pushes the saw away from him, but not when the saw is drawn back.

This saw, distinguished for its simplicity and convenience in working, is in general use in England and North America, but has only within recent years been adopted in Sweden, where it is now rapidly gaining favour.



Fig. 41. Hand-saw. ¼.

2. The **Dovetail saw** (Fig. 42) has a very broad blade of equal breadth throughout, with a handle. To give sufficient strength to the blade, its upper edge is enclosed in an

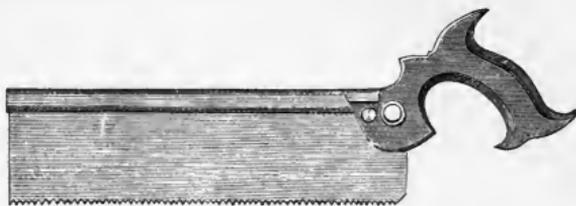


Fig. 42. Dovetail-saw. $\frac{1}{4}$.

iron back. This thick back limits the depth of the cut; consequently this saw is only used for shallow incisions, *e.g.*, in sawing out tenons, dovetails, etc. This saw has 10 to 12 teeth per inch. The shape of the teeth is shown in Fig. 32, but they are often sharpened with advantage in the manner shown in Fig. 33.

[3. The **Tenon-saw** is practically the same as the dovetail-saw, but it is rather larger, and it has what is called a Box-handle, somewhat like that of the hand-saw.—Trs.]

4. The **Compass-saw** (Fig. 43). The blade is very narrow, and terminates in a point. This saw is used when



Fig. 43. Compass-saw. $\frac{1}{4}$.

an excision has to be made in the centre of a piece of work, and cannot be begun from the edge. For this purpose a hole must be bored, into which the point of the saw can be inserted. To give the blade sufficient strength it is made tolerably thick, but it becomes thinner towards the back. Compass-saws are of various sizes, and the teeth are set in different ways. The number of teeth varies from 5 to 12 per inch, but their form is in most cases that shown in Fig. 32.

4. The **Groove-saw** * (Fig. 44) has a tolerably thick blade

* Unknown in England, but recommended as useful.—Trs.

of equal breadth throughout, the upper edge of which is entirely enclosed by a handle, which is worked by both hands. The teeth are inclined towards the worker, and consequently act when he draws the saw towards him.

It sometimes happens, especially in clamping and grooving, that an incision must be made in a broad flat piece of wood, and in many cases it must not be carried to the edge.

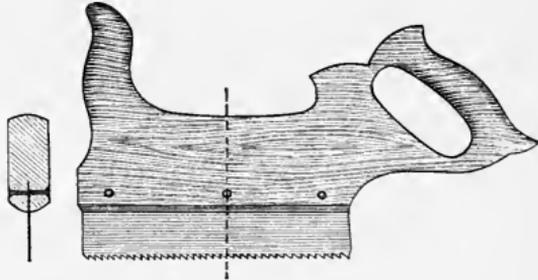


Fig. 44. Groove-saw. †.

With the exception of the tenon-saw, the saws hitherto described cannot be used for this purpose. The groove-saw is perfectly adapted for it, whereas the tenon-saw is not quite so convenient, because the setting of its teeth is not suitable, and it has only one handle.

II. The Axe.

After the saw the *axe* is one of the most useful tools in the earlier stages of any piece of work. Axes are of various kinds, manufactured for different purposes. An axe of American construction, very suitable for *slöjd* work, is shown in Fig. 45. The edge and faces are slightly curved, and ground on both sides. The axe should not weigh more than about 2 lbs., that it may, without trouble, be wielded by one hand.



Fig. 45. Axe. Ohio pattern. †.

The *handle*, of hard and tough wood, such as oak or ash, should be curved so as to fall well into the hand, and the axe

shaft must be firmly secured by wedges into the *eye* of the axe-head.

In working with the axe the wood is supported on a *block*, formed of an evenly sawn-off piece of the trunk of a tree. The best tree for this purpose is the poplar.

The surface of the block must always be kept free from sand, which would destroy the edge of the axe.

It is of the utmost importance for beginners to hold the piece of wood in such a way that the hands may receive no injury.

*Grinding
the axe.*

In **grinding** (see under this head, pp. 115-118) the axe and all other edge-tools, the tool must be held steadily against the grindstone, in order that the bevelled edge may be quite regular and of the same breadth, not waving. The two bevelled edges should form an angle of about 20° .

III. The Knife.

*A suitable
slöjd knife.*

The *knife* is the *slöjder's* indispensable and most important tool, and it is the *first* to be placed in the hands of a beginner. It is therefore important to select for slöjd suitable knives of the best quality. The blade of the slöjd knife should be made of good steel, about 4 inches long, and not more than $\frac{3}{8}$ inch broad.



Fig. 46. Slöjd-knife—Nääs pattern. $\frac{1}{2}$.

The edge should be straight, and the two faces which form it should extend over the entire breadth of the blade. The back of the knife should not be more than $\frac{3}{16}$ inch thick. The blade ought not to taper to a dagger-like point, but should terminate as is shown in Fig. 46. The best angle for the edge is 15° . The other end of the blade terminates in a *tang* which slots into the handle.

A commoner, though by no means so suitable form of knife is shown



Fig. 47. Slöjd knife. †.

in Fig. 47. Directions for using the knife are given in Chap. V.

IV.—The Draw-Knife.

This consists of a steel blade with an edge formed by grinding on one side only. This blade is furnished at both ends with handles, at right angles to it, and in the same plane. The tool is worked with both hands, so that the



Fig. 48. Draw-knife. †.

whole strength of the slöjder can be thrown into its use. *Use of the draw-knife*
 The draw-knife is chiefly used in modelling and smoothing objects with curved outlines. It is also used in making hoops for barrels, &c. Directions for its use are given in Chap. V.

V.—Chisels, Gouges, Carving Tools, &c.

These terms include a whole group of tools which are used in wood-slöjd for the removal of small pieces of wood, in cases where the knife, the saw, or the plane could not advantageously be used.

They consist of a flat or concave blade made of steel, the *Parts of a chisel, &c.*
 cutting end of which is cut straight across and sharpened to

an edge, and the other wrought into a four-sided *tang*, which is set into a wooden *handle*. The tool in working is driven into the wood either by the pressure of the hand, or by blows from a mallet. In order that the handle may not slip, or twist round when grasped, it is generally made with four sides, greater in breadth than in thickness, and with the broader sides rounded.* To keep the handle from splitting under violent pressure, the base of the tang is furnished with a *shoulder*, on which the handle rests.

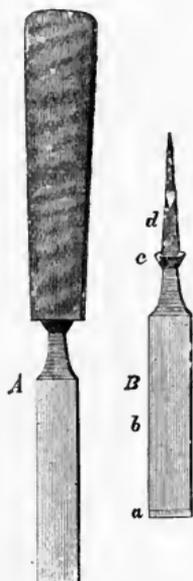


Fig. 49. Firmer Chisel $\frac{1}{4}$.
 A. Blade and handle.
 B. Blade showing a face and edge.
 C. Blade. c. shoulder. d. tang.

These tools vary greatly in size both as regards length and breadth. The latter dimension determines the dimensions of the edge. The broadest tools are generally also the longest.

In order to be able to execute all the different kinds of exercises which occur, it is necessary to have a complete set of each description of tools. There are usually 12 in a set, all of different breadths.

Tools of this kind are classified according to the different shapes of the blade and edge, and the different methods of sharpening as follows:—

1. Chisels.

The face side A. of the firmer chisel is perfectly flat.

1. The **Firmer Chisel** (Fig. 49). The breadth of the blade, which varies from $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch, is generally much greater than its thickness. The angle between the bevel and the flat face varies from 25° to 30° .

The firmer chisel is used in paring plane or convex surfaces; in mortising, when it often does duty instead of the mortise

* English handles are generally *turned* in boxwood or beech.—Trs.

chisel ; in curved work ; in facing off ; and, generally speaking, in all cases where no other tool can be made use of with advantage.

2. The **Mortise-chisel** (Fig. 50). The thickness of the blade generally exceeds its breadth, which varies from $\frac{1}{8}$ inch to 1 inch. The front face of the blade is always a little broader than the back.

The mortise-chisel is used for mortising ; and, whenever possible, a blade of the same breadth as the mortise to be made should be selected. The great thickness of the tool enables its sides to act with steady force upon the sides of the mortise, and makes accurate execution of the operation much easier. It is driven into the wood by blows from a mallet. The angle of the edge is the same as in the firmer chisel.

2. Gouges.

These tools have a *curved* edge.

The blade of the gouge is concave. The bevelled edge may either be (a) ground from *within outwards*, in which case the edge will lie upon the inner or concave side, or (b) *in the reverse way*, when the edge will lie upon the outer or convex side.

Gouges ground in the first mentioned manner are used in the formation of grooves or bowl-shaped depressions. Those ground in the other way

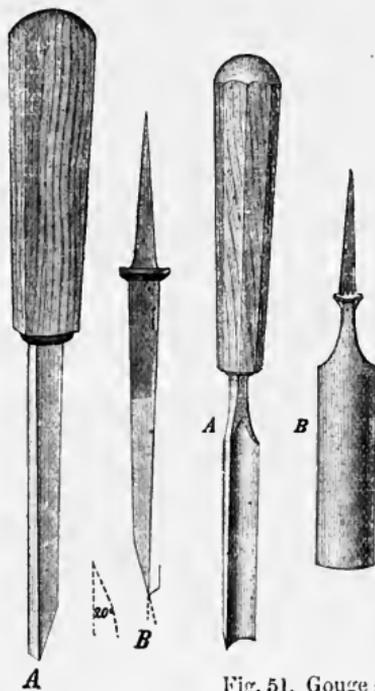


Fig. 50. Mortise-chisel. $\frac{1}{4}$.
A. shows breadth and angle of the edge.

Fig. 51. Gouge $\frac{1}{4}$.
A. with edge on the inner side.
B. with edge on the outer side.

are used chiefly in perpendicular paring to produce concave and cylindrical surfaces.

The breadth of the gouge varies from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches, and the curve of the edge may include from one-tenth to one-half of a circle, or 36° to 180° . All the gouges in one set should have the same curve in the edge. The gouge is driven into the wood by the hand, or in the case of gouges of large size, by the mallet.

3. The Spoon Gouge and the Spoon Iron.

Ordinary gouges are often used in forming the bowls of spoons and similar articles, but the tools specially adapted, and best for the purpose, are the *spoon gouge* and *spoon iron*. The larger illustration (Fig. 52) shows the spoon gouge. In construction, and in the way it is used, it somewhat resembles A (Fig. 51); but it differs from it in having the blade curved lengthwise, to facilitate the work of hollowing out.

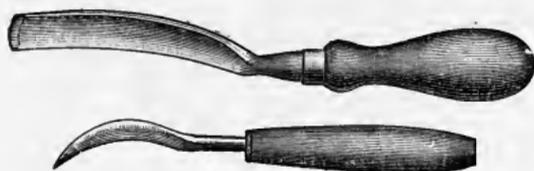


Fig. 52. Spoon Gouge and Spoon Iron. †. The spoon iron is different in form. It is shown in the smaller illustration (Fig. 52), and resembles a knife with a lancet-shaped blade, with two edges, curved like a bow, and tapering to a point at the end. It is worked with both hands, and cuts to either side.

4. Carving Tools.

A number of tools, more or less like the preceding, are used in wood-carving. Some of these carving tools are flat, with rectangular edges; others are oblique to the direction of their length, with a bevelled edge on both sides; others are concave, with a circular edge, or have two edges meeting in a point. They are straight in some cases; in others, curved.

As only a few of these tools are used in slöjd carpentry, to

any extent worth mentioning, no description of them is given; but those in most common use, with their names, are shown in Fig. 53. The full size of the edge is given in the outline beside the representation of each tool.

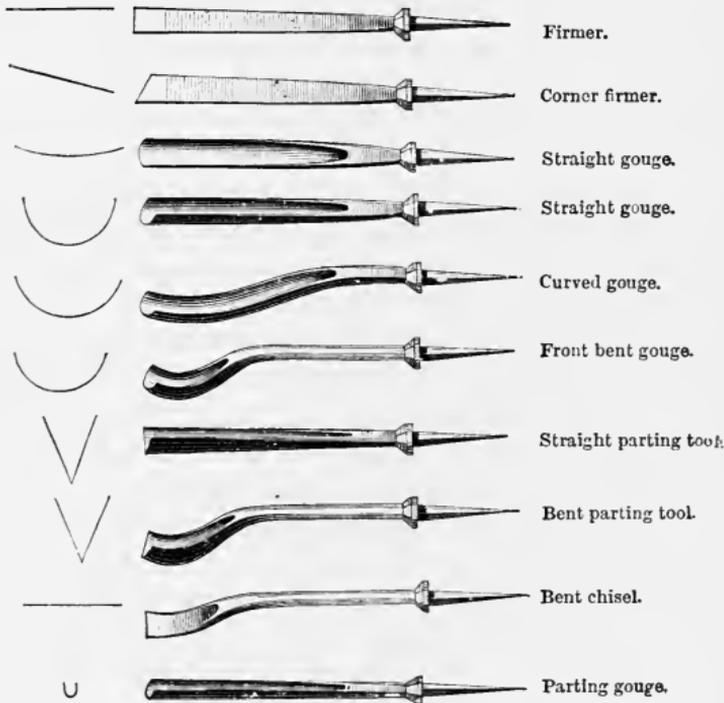


Fig. 53. Carving Tools. $\frac{1}{4}$.

VI. Planes.

The edge tools hitherto described consist of a single steel blade, with a cutting edge of various descriptions, and a handle for one or both hands. The inclination of the edge to the surface of the wood may thus be altered at will, as the circumstances of the case require. Narrow surfaces, or surfaces of generally circumscribed area, may thus be levelled and smoothed to a certain extent (though not perfectly) by the knife, the axe, the chisel, etc.; but when long and broad surfaces have to be made absolutely smooth, we require an

edge-tool which, by attacking in the first place all the elevations, and by always cutting equally deep on a plane surface (*i.e.*, by always removing shavings of the same thickness), finally reduces the surface to one uniform level.

The **plane** is the tool which fulfils these requirements. In the plane, the steel blade called the *plane-iron* is wedged tightly into a parallelopiped-shaped wooden block, called the *plane stock*, which is formed in various ways for various purposes. The edge of the blade extends slightly beyond the under side of the block.

The plane is used not only in the dressing of *plane* surfaces, but also in the preparation of all surfaces on which straight lines can be drawn in at least *one* direction; *e.g.*, in smoothing the surface of cylindrical and conical objects, etc. Consequently, many different kinds of planes are required.

The plane-stock. All planes, however, consist of two principal parts: the *sole* or *stock*, and the *iron*. The stock is formed of hard, tough, straight-fibred wood in the form of a parallelopiped, the under side of which, the *sole*, glides over the work when the tool is used. The best wood is elm, beech, pear, or box-wood, which has been well seasoned to prevent warping. The plane is worked with both hands. The front part of Swedish planes is often provided with a rest for the hand, called the *horn*. The larger kind of planes have a handle behind the iron.

The plane-iron. The plane-iron is placed obliquely in a hole in the stock, called the *socket* (Figs. 54 and 56), with its edge extending a very little beyond the sole, and it is secured by a wooden *wedge*. It is made of iron, with a steel front. In shape it resembles a wedge, the thicker end of which is sharpened. The wedge-like shape gives the required thickness and strength to the sharpened end, leaves more room towards the upper end, and also helps to keep the plane-iron firmly in its place when the edge comes against hard knots in the wood and the pressure tends to force the iron upwards.

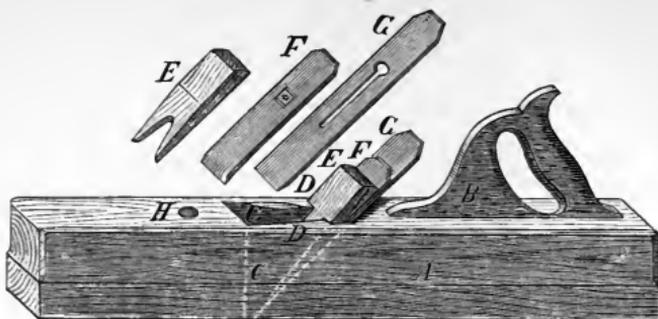
To form the edge, the plane-iron is ground on the posterior or bevelled edge. This forms an angle of from 20° to 25° with the front face of the plane-iron. The former angle is suitable for loose fibred timber; the latter for hard or knotty wood. The edge must not be too thin, for if so, the iron will *fly*, *i.e.*, become jagged. The iron is generally placed in the socket at an angle of 45° to the plane of the sole, with the bevelled edge downwards.

Angle of the edge of the plane-iron and its position in the stock.

It occasionally happens, *e.g.*, in small American planes with iron stocks, that the bevelled edge of the plane-iron is turned upwards at an angle of 25° to the plane of the sole. It may also be mentioned, in passing, that in planes manufactured for special purposes, *e.g.*, planing particularly hard kinds of wood, the irons are placed at an angle of 50° , 55° , 60° , or even 90° .

As indicated above, the plane acts by removing thicker or thinner shavings, according as the plane-iron extends more or less beyond the sole. In working with the knife it is always possible to alter the position of the edge in order to prevent its cutting in the same direction as the fibres run, which would tear them, and render the surface uneven. But it is not always possible to guide the stationary plane-iron in this way. Hence in cross-grained wood, or in timber where the fibres lie parallel with the surface, the plane has a tendency to split or tear them, and the resistance offered by the torn fibres is often so great that the plane cannot be driven forward. The fibres also, by their elasticity, tend to drag the iron downwards. To prevent the fibres tearing in front of the iron, provision must be made (1) *for breaking them off at once*, and (2) *for bringing at the same time pressure to bear on them* from above, just over the edge of the iron, by means of which their elasticity may be diminished or wholly neutralised. The *first* object is attained by placing a *cover* above the iron, the effect of which is to break off the fibres as quickly as they are detached; the *second*, by reducing the *set* or opening in front of the iron as much as is compatible with the free passage of the shavings through it.

The cover.

fig. 54. Trying Plane. $\frac{1}{2}$.

A stock, B handle, C socket, DD cheeks, E wedge, F cover, G iron, H boss.

To put on
the cover.

A rectangular opening in the iron, enlarged and rounded at one end, admits the screw of the cover, and permits of its adjustment. The lower end of the cover is curved, with the concave side inwards, and it terminates in a sharp edge. When the screw is tightened this sharp edge must lie *close against* the surface of the iron (see Fig. 55). If the slightest space is left the shavings will force their way through. The other side of the cover must be carefully rounded to permit the shavings to glide freely over it. The edge of the cover should be very near the edge of the iron. In finishing up a surface, and plain jointing, the distance should be about $\frac{1}{32}$ inch, and about double that distance in cases where coarser shavings may be removed. The distance between the socket and the edge of the plane in front should be about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch for fine planing, and not more than $\frac{3}{16}$ inch for coarser work.

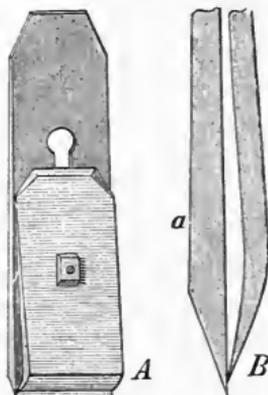


Fig. 55. Plane Iron.

A seen from the front $\frac{1}{2}$.

B seen from the side $\frac{1}{2}$.

a iron, b cover.

The wedge
and the
socket.

In planes like the smoothing-plane and the trying-plane, where the iron is narrower than the sole, and is inserted in the socket from above, the front side of the socket should be at right angles with the plane of the sole, and of the same

breadth as the iron. The inclination of the side of the socket on which the iron rests has been already indicated; the other two sides, *i.e.*, the *cheeks*, are thicker towards the iron, in order to give support and steadiness to the wedge, and the sides of the wedge are inclined towards one another at an angle of about 8° . If this angle is much greater the wedge fits loosely; if it is less it may fit so tightly that it cannot without difficulty be loosened. The wedge, which is forked at the lower end, must fit accurately into the space in the socket left by the iron, otherwise shavings may gather round its points (see Fig. 56). These points require frequently to be trimmed, because from repeated sharpening the wedge-shaped plane-iron gradually sinks deeper in the socket, causing the wedge to do the same.

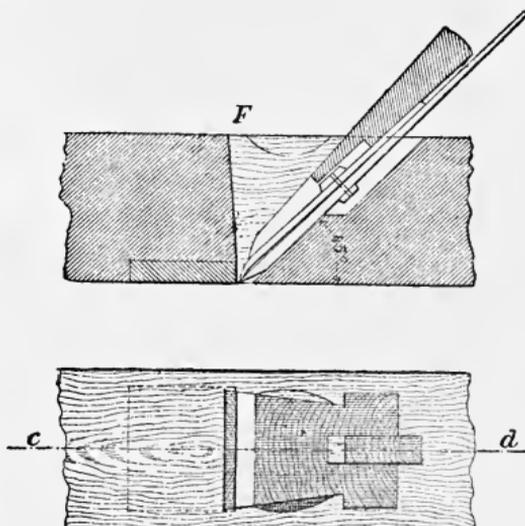


Fig. 56. Portion of Plane. Socket. $\frac{1}{4}$.
F section through *c d* showing plane iron, wedge and piece of wood inserted.

Should the sole of the plane become warped, or uneven through wear, it must be carefully planed. It follows from the construction of the socket that the opening in front of the iron, after repeated planing, becomes too large. It is usual to remedy this by inserting in front of the iron a piece of very hard wood, *e.g.*, ebony, beech, or boxwood (see Fig. 56). Brass is also used for this purpose. New planes are also

Planing the sole and inserting a piece of wood.

often furnished with such pieces, in order that the portion in front of the plane-iron's edge may longer resist the wearing effect of the shavings.

Putting in the Plane-Iron or Setting the Plane.

The cover is screwed tightly on the iron, with its sharp edge at the proper distance from the edge of the iron, which is then laid in the socket, just deep enough to allow its edge to lie in the same plane as the surface of the sole. The wedge is then put in, and secured by a couple of light blows from the hammer. The plane is then taken in the left hand, with the thumb resting on the wedge in the socket. The sole is turned upwards, and the iron is carefully driven in a little more, so that its edge shows just as much beyond the plane of the sole as the occasion requires. If it seems crooked, *i.e.*, if one corner seems lower than the other, this must be rectified by light taps on its free edges. When its position appears to be right, the iron is secured by driving the wedge in more firmly. If, after this, the iron is found to be too low, it may be made to recede by a blow on the back part of the stock, or, in the case of the trying-plane, by a blow on the *boss*, a piece of hard wood or metal inserted in front of the socket (see *H*, Fig. 54). [This *boss* is not always found in English planes. It is useful in slöjd as indicating the place to which the blow should be directed, and thus saving the stock of the plane from injury.—TRS.] The loosened wedge is then fastened once more, and the position of the iron is tested by the thickness of the shavings it removes, and raised or lowered, if necessary, according to the above directions. When the iron is removed, the plane is held in the way indicated above.

1. Planes with Flat Soles for the dressing of plane surfaces.

1. The **jack-plane** (Fig. 57). To give certainty and ease in working, the front portion of the stock of a Swedish jack-plane is furnished with a horn for the hand, and a metal

support of American invention is sometimes placed behind the iron to prevent the other hand from coming in contact with its sharp edges. The iron is single, *i.e.*, it has no cover, and the edge is curved, not square. The Swedish jack-plane is $9\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. [The English jack-plane is 17 inches long.—Trs.]

Length of
the jack-
plane.

The jack-plane is used on rough unplaned surfaces as a preparation for a finer plane, when the object in view is more to remove thick shavings ra-

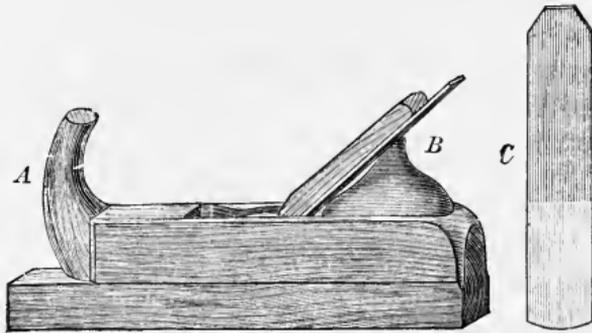


Fig. 57. Jack-plane. $\frac{1}{4}$.

A horn, B support for hand, C single iron.

pidly by an iron which cuts deep, than to produce a smooth surface. As the iron is single, and the opening in front of it tolerably wide, the jack-plane has a tendency to tear up the wood; and it is therefore not advisable to use this tool very near the surface which is ultimately to be produced.

2. The **trying-plane** is the largest and most indispensable of all the planes in use. That it may be wielded steadily it is provided with a *handle* for one hand. The iron is *double*, *i.e.*, provided with a cover. Its various parts and their construction are fully described in connection with Fig. 54, and the method of using it is described in Chap. V.

It is employed in *shooting*, *i.e.*, in producing level surfaces of all kinds, and it is sometimes used in preparatory work instead of the jack-plane, in which case the iron should be set rather deeper than for shooting. When the trying-plane is used instead of the jack-plane, the space between the socket and the edge of the iron in front should be wider than in the later stages of planing.

Use of the
trying plane

*Grinding
the plane-
iron.*

In all planes used for shooting, the surface of the sole must lie altogether in the same plane; and the edge of the plane-iron must be ground quite straight, and at right angles with the middle line of the iron. As, however, the corners of a perfectly straight-edge are apt to tear up the fibres by the side of the iron, or at least to leave a mark on the wood, they should be very slightly rounded. The sole is sometimes rubbed with raw linseed oil, that it may glide more smoothly over the wood.

The trying-plane should always be worked in the direction of its length, not obliquely to it, as is often improperly done.

*Length of
the trying
plane.*

The trying-plane should be about 20 inches long. [The English trying-plane is 22 inches long.—Trs.]

3. The **smoothing-plane** (Fig. 58) resembles the jack-plane, but is broader, and has a double iron.

*Use of the
smoothing
plane.*

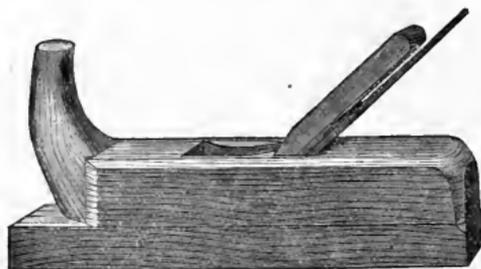


Fig. 58. Smoothing-plane. $\frac{1}{4}$.

The edge of the iron, or, as it is called, is "set fine in front."

The smoothing plane should be about $9\frac{1}{2}$ inches long. [The

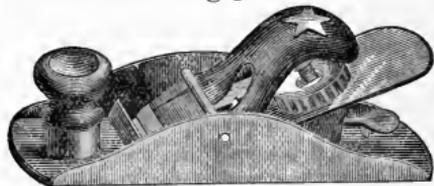


Fig. 59. Iron Smoothing-plane (American pattern). $\frac{1}{3}$.

English smoothing-plane is $7\frac{1}{2}$ inches long.—Trs.]

The smoothing-plane and planes like it may be furnished with a support for the hand, behind the iron, like the jack-plane.

Iron planes

As mentioned above, the stocks of planes are sometimes

made of iron. Planes of this kind are used in England, and to a still greater extent in America. The plane-iron is adjusted by means of a screw. Small iron smoothing-planes are very useful for children, whose hands are not large enough to hold planes of the ordinary size. A plane of this pattern is shown in Fig. 59.

4. The **rebate-plane** (Fig. 60). When the adjacent surfaces of a rebate have to be planed, the ordinary smoothing-plane does not answer because the iron is narrower than the sole. In the rebate-plane the edge of the iron is as broad as

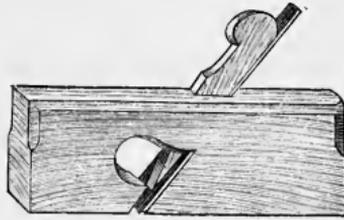


Fig. 60. Rebate-plane. $\frac{1}{2}$.

the sole, sometimes even a little broader. The upper part of the iron is much narrower, and it is wedged into a mortise in the stock. The iron may be single or double, and the shavings escape through an opening above the edge.

2. Planes for the Dressing of Curved Surfaces.

1. The **round**.—This plane is used for hollow grooved surfaces. It resembles the smoothing-plane and the jack-plane, but differs from them in the more or less convex sole,—the degree of convexity depending on the degree of concavity it is desired to produce. The iron

may be single or double, and the edge is rounded to correspond with the sole. An ordinary jack-plane may easily be converted into a round, by rounding the sole and the edge of the iron. In working the round

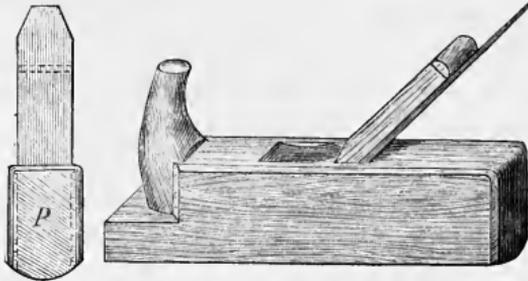


Fig. 61. Round. $\frac{1}{2}$.
P seen from behind.

it must always be driven forward in a line with its length. In consequence of the shape of the tool, any other method would destroy the surface required.

[2. The **hollow**, another plane of this kind, has the sole concave, and an iron to correspond. It is used in planing round surfaces.—TRS.]

3. The **compass plane**.—In this plane the sole is curved lengthwise, and the iron is an ordinary double one with a straight edge. It is used in planing hollow curved surfaces. Soles of different degrees of curvature are required, according to the radii of the surface to be planed, but it is not necessary that the two should accurately correspond. The curvature

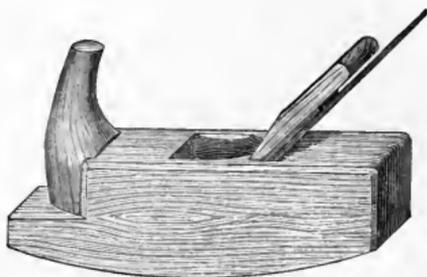


Fig. 62. Compass Plane. †.

of the sole must not be *less* than the curvature of the surface of the work, but it may be greater. The difference, however, if any, must be slight, because the two opposing surfaces must correspond closely enough to permit of the steady guidance of the tool. One compass-plane, therefore, will not suffice for surfaces of greatly varying curvature.

American compass-planes of iron, called adjustable planes, have flexible steel soles, which can be adapted to surfaces of different degrees of curvature. One plane of this kind is therefore enough.

3. The Old Woman's Tooth-Plane, and Dove-tail Filletster.

The **old woman's tooth-plane** is quite unlike the planes hitherto described. It consists of a block of wood on the inner side of which is fastened an iron, secured by a thumb-screw. (Fig. 63). The construction of some planes of this kind is much simpler; they consist merely of a parallelepiped piece

of wood, in the middle of which is wedged a straight or curved iron. In this case the blade of a firmer chisel is often used.

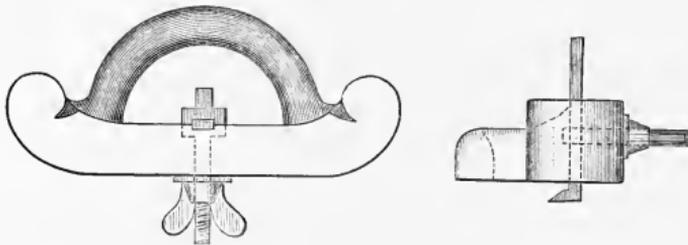


Fig. 63. Old Woman's Tooth-Plane, seen from above and from the side. $\frac{1}{2}$.

The **dove-tail filletster** is like the rebate plane, but differs from it in having the plane of the sole oblique to the sides of the stock, instead of at right angles to them, and also in having a rebate either in a piece with the sole, or attached to it for the purpose of guiding the plane

along the line of the dove-tail rebate to be formed.

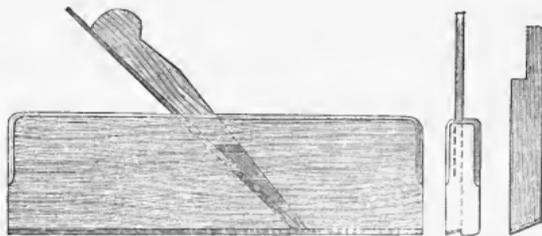


Fig. 64. Dove-tail Filletster, seen from the side and from behind. $\frac{1}{2}$.

In the simple kind of filletster shown in Fig. 64, the rebate is fixed, but in the more complicated kind (Fig. 65), the rebate is adjustable to suit deeper or shallower work; the latter is also provided with a "cutter," which determines the line within which the surface is to be planed. This line, in other cases, must first be gauged with a cutting gauge; otherwise the plane will tear the fibres on that side and make it uneven.

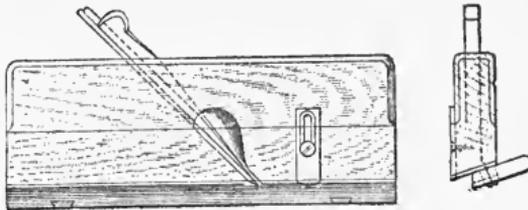


Fig. 65. Dove-tail Filletster. $\frac{1}{2}$.

Both these planes are used in making dove-tail rebates; the old woman's tooth in smoothing and levelling the bottom of the groove into which the dove-tail is shot, and the filletster in working the dove-tail.

4. The Plough.

When a rectangular groove is made in a piece of wood the **off plough** is used. The breadth of the iron must not exceed the breadth of the groove to be made, and the sole consists of an iron splint set into the stock. The plough is furnished with a directing gauge, adjustable by bolts and wedges or screws. From 6 to 12 irons of different breadths accompany each plane.

5. The Iron Spokeshave.

The spokeshave may be included in the same class as the plane. It is made entirely of iron, with two handles, and is worked with both hands. The sole is very short—shorter than the breadth of the iron—and this renders the tool very useful in forming narrow convex or concave surfaces.

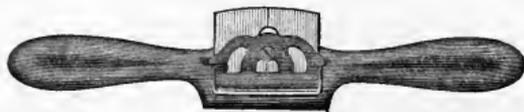


Fig. 66. Spokeshave. †.

the tool more serviceable (see Fig. 66).

The spokeshave is a simple, practical, and easily-managed tool. It is made in several sizes, and the iron may have a *straight edge*, or one which *curves outwards*. The former is more common.

The iron is secured by a screw and a fixing plate. The latter also does duty as a cover, and makes

VII. Files.

The files used in wood-slöjd are the same as those used in metal work. The file plays, however, a much less important part in the former than in the latter. In wood-slöjd it is used chiefly to smooth curved surfaces, the interior of holes and depressions, and the ends of pieces of wood, in all cases where edge-tools cannot be used advantageously.

The **file** consists of a piece of steel, the shape of which may vary, and on the surface of which sharp *ridges* have been cut with a chisel. These ridges are equidistant the one from the other, and oblique to the length of the file. They form the *file-grade* (Fig. 67)—the essential characteristic of the tool.

The file-grade.

A *single-cut* file is cut in one direction only; in a *double-cut* file the cuts cross one another. Both



Fig. 67. File-grade. §.

cuts incline towards the point of the tool, the result of which is that the file acts chiefly when driven forward, and has little effect when drawn back. The files used in wood-slöjd have usually a tapering point. All files terminate at the other end in a tang which slots into the handle.

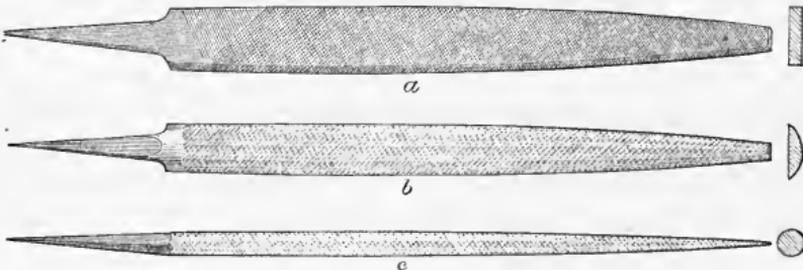


Fig. 68. Files. †.

a flat file, b half-round file, c round file.

Files are called triangular, square, flat, round, half-round, etc., according to the form of the blade in cross-section. *Flat*

round, and half-round files are most used in wood-slöjd (Fig. 68). The *triangular* file is used for sharpening saws (Fig. 36).

The fineness of the file depends on the number of cuts per inch. They are usually classified as *coarse*, *medium*, *fine*, and *very fine*.

Medium files, about 12 inches long, are the most useful for working in wood, but coarse files, or *rasps*, may be used in the first stages of work.

Method of
using the
file.

When in use, the file is grasped by the handle by one hand, and the wrist or fingers of the other are laid on the point to produce the required pressure. The file is passed steadily and slowly backwards and forwards over the work if the surface desired is level, and with a circular motion if it is curved. Pressure is exerted only when the file is driven forward; when it is drawn back again it is allowed to glide over the surface. When the work cannot be made fast, the file must be worked with one hand; but, whenever possible, the work should be secured to the bench, that both hands may be free to direct and steady the file.

Cleaning the
file.

In filing resinous or unseasoned wood, the cuts of the file are apt to become clogged with sawdust. The file may be cleaned with a stiff steel brush, but the simplest method of cleaning a wood file is to dip it in hot water to loosen the sawdust, and afterwards dry it and brush it. The same file should never be used for wood and metal.

VIII. Methods of Finishing Work.

1. The Scraper.

This tool consists of a highly-tempered piece of steel (Fig. 69). The edges of the scraper are generally straight, but sometimes the ends are rounded or hollowed to suit concave or convex surfaces. The two longest parallel edges are ground at right angles to the sides. When the

Sharpening
the scraper.



Fig. 69. Scraper. 4.

scraper is sharpened, it is placed at the edge of a plank, and a very hard piece of steel is drawn against its edge as nearly as possible on the plane of the plank. This, when repeated several times backwards and forwards, levels the sharp edge of the scraper, which is raised up again by having the steel *once*, steadily but not too heavily, passed along it. During this the steel is held almost perpendicular, with its upper end inclined very slightly towards the upper side of the plank. The *raised* edge of the scraper now forms a fine edge, which takes hold of the wood when drawn across its surface, and removes minute shavings. When it becomes blunt, it must be sharpened once more, and as its edge, after repeated sharpening, becomes uneven, it must finally be re-ground. A worn saw-file, the cut of which has been carefully ground off, and the edges slightly rounded, or a firmer chisel, may be used.

The scraper should be held easily in the hand. In polishing a plane surface, the tool should be taken in both hands. The scraper should incline towards the surface of the work (see Chap. V., page 142), and should be worked always in the direction towards which it leans, and *with* the grain of the wood, but somewhat obliquely to the direction of the fibres. Towards the end, pressure should be diminished, to produce a finer polish. Care must be taken lest the cutting edge become ragged from careless "setting," and scratch the surface. Should this be so, the scraper must be re-ground, and then sharpened.

*Method of
using the
scraper.*

2. Sand-Paper.

Sand-paper is made of paper with a coating of finely-ground flint, glass, or quartz glued on to it. The grains on the same paper are always of the same size, and, according to the finer or coarser quality, the paper is numbered from 0 to rough 2.

*Sand-paper
made of flint
and of glass.*

[Sand-paper made of flint is generally used in Sweden. In England, glass-paper is considered the best.—Trs.]

When in use, the sand-paper should be torn off in pieces of convenient size, and a bit laid on the plane surface of a piece of cork or wood, $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch thick, and of a good size to be held in the hands. If a sufficiently thick piece of cork cannot be obtained, a thin piece should be glued on a piece of wood, or, failing cork, a piece of card-board will answer the purpose. This serves the purpose of a soft *rubber* (wood alone being too hard), and gives the necessary support to the sand-paper, which, used in this way, acts much in the same manner as the file, and may be considered to all intents and purposes as a tool.

*Sand-paper
really a tool.*

Sand-paper may be used without a rubber only in the case of concave or convex surfaces, where there are no sharp edges. Care must be taken in finishing off not to work the paper in the direction of the fibres, but either at right angles or obliquely to it, in order to produce a smooth surface. Just at the last, the paper may be passed once or twice in the same line as the fibres, to remove any ridges or marks which may have been produced. For similar reasons, the paper last used should be finer than that first employed, in order to secure a perfectly smooth surface.

Sand-paper should never be used to form or smooth up the surface of objects. The knife, the file, the smoothing-plane, the scraper, etc. are the proper tools for this purpose. Sand-paper should be used only in finishing off, and when the use of the smoothing-plane is understood, it is not much needed for plane surfaces. In the case of objects with curved surfaces, on the other hand, it is almost indispensable.

*Sand-paper
should be
used
sparingly.*

Finishing off with sand-paper should never be done in a thoughtless, mechanical way. To attain a satisfactory result the greatest attention is requisite.

IX. Brace and Bits.

Bits of different kinds are used in making round holes. Bits for wood are made of a special kind of steel, one end of which forms the cutting portion of the tool, and the other is

wedge-shaped, that it may be securely fastened into a handle or *brace*, by means of which it revolves. In working, the brace is always turned *to the right*, and the bits are made to cut in the same direction. The edge of the bit is designed to make its way into the wood without great pressure, and without risk of splitting it. The bit must work without hindrance from the shavings; otherwise it will become hot from friction, and boring will be difficult. A good bit cuts like a knife, detaches smooth spiral shavings, and becomes only moderately warm, even when worked quickly.

The *brace* may vary in construction. Fig. 70 shows a very strong Swedish brace made of iron. The upper end, or *tang* of the bit, forms a square truncated pyramid, which slots into a hole in the *brace socket*, and is fastened by a spring. Fig. 71 shows an American brace, also made of iron. It has a *screw adjustable socket*, into which the bit is secured. The tang of the bit may be of any form, provided it is somewhat rectangular.



*How a bit
should work.*

Fig. 70. Swedish Brace. 4.

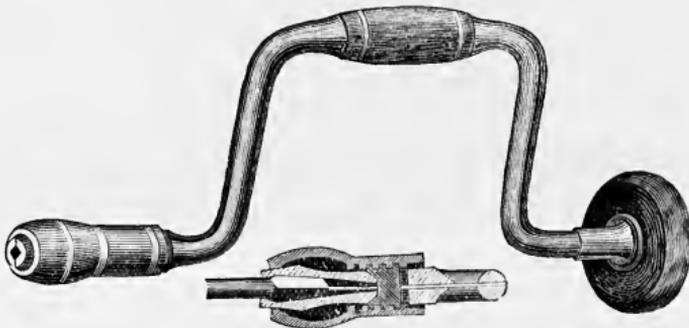


Fig. 71. American Brace; section of screw adjustable socket, or bit holder. 4.

The bits in most general use are *quill-bits* and *centre-bits*. Small quill-bits are called *pin-bits*.

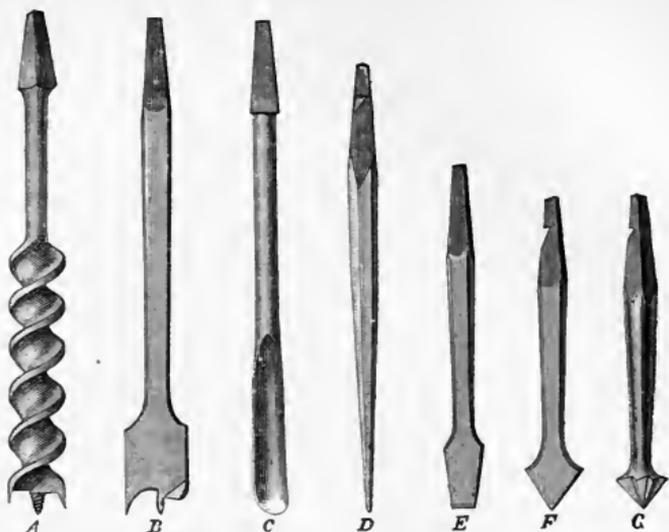


Fig. 72. *A*, Auger-bit. *B*, Centre-bit. *C*, Quill-bit. *D*, Hole-rimer drill. *E*, Screwdriver bit. *F* and *G*, Counter-sink drills. $\frac{1}{2}$.

1. The **quill-bit** (Fig. 72, *C*) is gouge-shaped, with the end curved like the point of a spoon. Unlike the centre-bit, it has no middle point, and it is therefore more difficult to gauge to holes of given size, especially if the latter are large.

This bit is better than the centre-bit for boring end pieces. Quill-bits are made in various sizes, from those adapted for holes of $\frac{1}{8}$ inch in diameter to those suitable for holes of $1\frac{1}{2}$ inch in diameter. The smallest kind, the pin-bit, is most used in wood slöjd. A set of pin-bits includes from 8 to 10, varying in size from $\frac{1}{8}$ inch to $\frac{1}{2}$ inch.

2. The Centre-bit.

1. The ordinary centre-bit (Fig. 72, *B*, and 73, *B*) has a flat blade, the lower portion of which is broader than the upper, as is shown in the illustrations. In the middle of the lower edge is the *centre-point* *a*, and at one side is the *cutter* *b*. In

The ordinary centre-bit.

boring, the cutter makes a circular incision corresponding to the circumference of the hole, and thus determines its diameter, prevents the wood from splitting, and facilitates the removal of shavings and sawdust by the *lip c*, the edge of which is horizontal to the point and oblique to the blade, and which cuts at right angles to the cutter. The centre point is longer than the cutter, which again cuts deeper than the lip. In sharpening the centre-bit, which may be done with a small half-round file, care must be taken that the edge of the cutter is on the outer side, and the edge of the lip on the under side. A set of bits should contain 8 to 12 centre-bits, from $\frac{3}{8}$ inch to 1 inch broad.

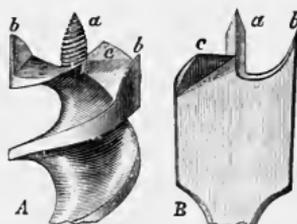


Fig. 73. *A*, Portion of Auger-bit. *B*, Portion of Centre-bit. *aa* Centre-point, *bbb* Cutter, *ccc* Lip.

2. The **auger** (Fig. 72, *A*) belongs to the same class. In boring with the bits previously described, it is necessary to exercise a certain degree of pressure, but the auger works its way into the wood by means of the conical screw which forms its centre point, and after the screw has once started all that is needed is to make it revolve. The auger is besides furnished with a cutter and a lip on both sides of the screw. (See Fig. 73, *A*.)

Way in which the auger works

Above the cutting portion it is spiral in form, and thus we have a double spiral with sharp edges. This gives plenty of room for the sawdust and shavings which are worked out of the hole without the removal of the auger. The American augers are the best. A set includes 6 to 12 pieces, from $\frac{3}{16}$ inch to 1 inch.

The best augers.



Fig. 74.—Expansion bit. $\frac{1}{2}$.

*Adjustable
or expansion
bits.*

The expansion bit (Fig. 74) is of American construction. Within certain limits it admits of holes of different sizes being bored with one and the same bit. Its point, lip, and cutter are tolerably like those of the auger, but it is furnished with two loose cutters, which may be screwed in to suit the diameter desired. The adjustable cutter does the work both of lip and cutter. The expansion bit makes holes with remarkably even surfaces, and with two different sizes it is possible to bore holes varying in diameter from $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to 3 inches.

*Screwdriver
bit, counter-
sink drill,
and hole-
rimer.*

A screw-driver bit (Fig. 72, E), two or three counter-sink drills (Fig. 72, F and G), and a couple of square or hexagonal hole-rimers (Fig. 72, D) are usually included in a complete set of bits. The counter-sink drill is used to produce a conical hole in wood or metal, suitable for sinking screw-heads. The rimer enlarges holes in thin metal plates, *e.g.*, screw holes in hinge-plates.



Fig. 75. Bradawl. $\frac{1}{8}$.

3. **The Bradawl** (Fig. 75). This tool consists of a steel bit $\frac{1}{8}$ inch to $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick, and 2 inches long. Its point is like that of an awl, or it may be chisel-pointed. The bit is secured in the handle by a screw-socket. Several bits of different sizes belong to the tool, and the handle, which is hollow, serves as a case for them. The bradawl is used to bore holes for sprigs, nails, etc. When holes are bored with the chisel-pointed bit, the edge is placed across the grain of the wood, and pressure is exerted in this direction to prevent the splitting of the wood.

X. The Mallet, the Hammer, the Hand Vice, Pincers, and Screwdriver.

The Mallet (Fig. 76) is made of hard, strong wood, preferably of figured beech. It is used for striking tools with wooden handles, because the hard hammer in such cases

would not only do damage, but would not serve the purpose so well.

The **Hammer** (Fig. 77) consists of a piece of steel with a hole for the handle, called the *eye*. One end is cylindrical and terminates in a flat surface, called the *face*; the other end, which is called the *pane*, is wedge-shaped, with a rounded edge. That the handle may be quite firm, the eye widens at the sides, and wedges driven hard into the end of the handle cause it to fill up the cavity entirely.

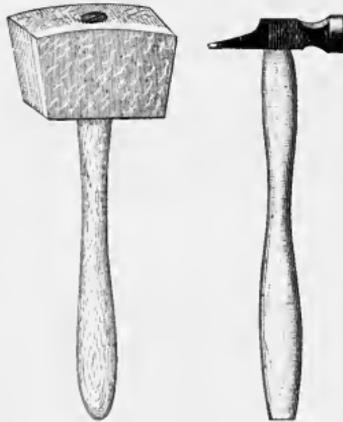


Fig. 76. Mallet. $\frac{1}{2}$. Fig. 77. Hammer. $\frac{1}{4}$.

There are various kinds of **pincers**, but only those used in wood sl \ddot{u} jd need be named here. Pincers have two steel arms rivetted together. The rivet divides the arms into two unequal portions, the longer, or *handles*, and the shorter, or *jaws*.



Fig. 78. Pincers. $\frac{1}{4}$.

The ordinary **pincers** have short, broad, sharply curved jaws, and are used to extract nails, etc.

The **wire-cutter** resembles the preceding, but is slighter in make, and its arms are curved and its jaws sharper. It is used to snap off pieces of wire, tin-tacks, etc. The jaws of the **flat pliers** are flat on the inner

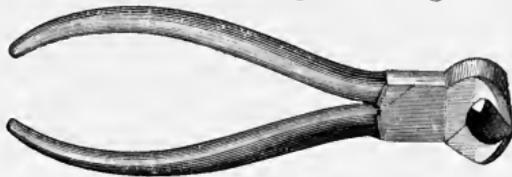
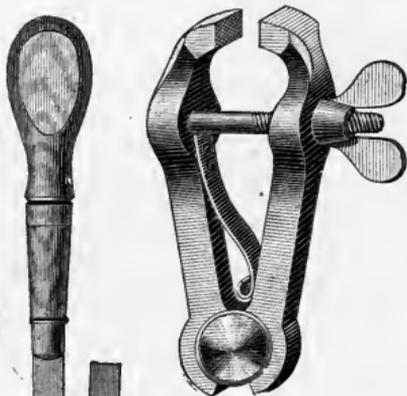


Fig. 79. Wire-cutter. $\frac{1}{4}$.

Fig. 80. Flat-jawed Pliers. $\frac{1}{2}$.Fig. 81. Round-jawed Pliers. $\frac{1}{2}$.

side, which is file-cut to enable them to take fast hold of small pieces of metal to be filed, bent, &c.

In the **round pliers** the jaws are more or less conical in shape, for the bending of wire, etc.

Fig. 82. Hand-vice. $\frac{1}{2}$.

The **hand-vice** is not so much employed in slöjd-carpentry as in metal slöjd. Its chief use is to secure small pieces of metal for filing. It may be held in the hand, or, after the piece of metal has been made fast, it may itself be screwed into a hand-screw or to the bench, that both hands may be free for the work of filing.

The **screwdriver** is used for driving in screws, and is made of hard steel. At the end it is bevelled to a thick point, which varies from $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch to $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch in thickness, depending on the size of the screw for which it is to be used.

The bevelled edges should be parallel, and the point should be as little as possible like a wedge in shape, but should lie flat in the slit of the nail, otherwise it will have a tendency to slip and become chipped.

Fig. 83.
Screwdriver.
 $\frac{1}{2}$

a the point,
full size, seen
from the side.

Shape of the
screwdriver.



E. The Grinding and Sharpening of Tools.

Work must never be done with blunt or badly-set tools. Tools must always be kept sharp and in good order.

These rules should *always* be kept in mind. Many a slöjder toils in the sweat of his brow with a blunt saw, or a badly set blunt plane, rather than take time to put his tool in order, though tools in good condition save hours of work, much unnecessary trouble, and needless vexation. Blunt tools demand more strength and exertion than sharp ones, and seldom, if ever, produce such good results. The rules given above are especially important in the case of children, for whom work ought not to be made unnecessarily difficult.

The sharpening of edge-tools is performed on the *grindstone* and the *oilstone*. The method of sharpening a saw has already been described (pp. 80, 81).

The ordinary **Grindstone** consists of a circular slab of sandstone, which rotates on an axle, and is provided with a handle for turning. It is supported on a grindstone stand or bench. Below the stone is a wooden well, lined with zinc, partially filled with water, into which the stone is sunk about one inch when in use. The stone should not be too fine in the grain or too hard.

The grindstone should never be used dry, because the steel does not "catch" well unless the stone is wet, and the friction on a dry stone "burns" the steel and makes the edge of the tool soft. Exposure to the sun for any length of time makes the stone too hard, while prolonged immersion of any portion of it in water renders that portion soft. Consequently it wears faster, and the stone becomes uneven or *eccentric*. The stone should therefore be kept dry except when in use.

A frame-work attached to the stand prevents splashing when the stone rotates by directing the water down into the well, and splashing may still further be avoided by fastening a thick piece of stuff in front so that it trails upon the stone

*Care of the
grindstone.*

and absorbs a portion of the surplus water. The stone must always be turned *towards* the worker and towards the edge of the tool, which must be moved steadily, and with equal pressure from side to side, across the whole breadth of the stone, to prevent the formation of scratches or depressions on its circumference. The bevelled edge produced by grinding must present either a flat or a concave surface to the convex surface of the stone. It must never be convex. The concave form of the bevelled edge is advantageous, because it materially lightens the final sharpening on the oilstone. The edge must also be quite straight unless a curved edge is actually required.

*Straight
edge.*

As it is difficult, especially for the inexperienced, to hold the steel steadily enough against the stone, a grinding support has been invented. Such a support of American make is shown in Fig. 84. It consists of an iron frame into which the plane-iron or the chisel is screwed. A small wheel below

*Accurate
grinding.*

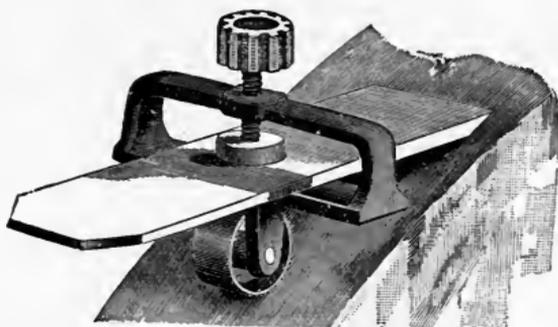


Fig. 84. Grinding-support, or grinding-rest. $\frac{1}{2}$.

the frame revolves upon the grindstone, and the desired angle on the edge of the tool is obtained by fastening it in with the edge at a shorter or longer distance from the frame. By means of this simple contrivance even an inexperienced pupil is able to grind a plane-iron correctly.

A very common fault in grinding is to make the angle which the bevelled edge makes with the face of the tool too

great, *i.e.*, to make the edge too thick. This is often done by beginners in their haste to be relieved from grinding.

The tool must be ground till a *raw edge* appears, *i.e.*, the very thin "film" or hair produced by the grindstone's removing the very edge of the steel. This, in its turn, is removed by the oilstone. *The raw edge.*

Sharpening with the oilstone is necessary, because the edge produced by the coarse-grained grindstone is neither fine enough nor even enough for immediate use.

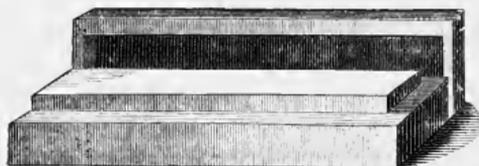


Fig. 85. Oilstone and case. $\frac{1}{4}$.

The **oilstone** is a slab of specially fine-grained stone. "Washita" and "Arkansas" stones from America, and "Turkey" stones are the best. *The best oilstones.* [Welsh

oilstones are less expensive, and can thoroughly be recommended.—Trs.] The oilstone should be 8 inches long and $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches broad, and it should be kept in a wooden box with a cover (Fig. 85). "Arkansas" stone is very hard and close-grained, and it "takes well," *i.e.*, it acts almost like a very fine file on the steel. The colour is yellowish-white. These stones last a long time, but are expensive to buy.

When in use, the oilstone should be moistened with vegetable oil. The addition of a little paraffin is an improvement. *Method of using the oilstone.* The tool is held in both hands, and the bevelled edge is applied closely to the stone in such a way that, while the bevel is altogether in contact with the stone, the edge presses rather more heavily on it, and this angle of inclination must be steadily maintained to prevent the edge from becoming rounded. The steel is now drawn over the stone with a slow, steady, backward and forward motion. When this has been repeated often enough, it is turned over and passed once over the stone with the face flat. The worker must not confine his operations to the middle of the stone, but must use the whole of the surface.

[This is contrary to the English method of grinding, the principle that no wire edge should be formed holding good. —TRS.]

An *oilstone slip*, *i.e.*, a piece of the same kind of stone as the oilstone, but smaller and thinner, and rounded at the edges, is required for the sharpening of gouges, spoon-irons, etc.

A sharp
edge.

Sharpening must be continued until the edge itself is not visible when held up against the light, or until it no longer appears white and rounded. Its sharpness is tested by touching it lightly with the finger.

F. The Tool Cupboard.

For the benefit of those who wish to procure a tool cupboard, complete drawings of one are given in Plate XI. It is so arranged that every tool has a fixed, easily observed place, in order that the absence of any may be readily discovered when the tools are laid past. Tools must further be so arranged that when *one* is taken out *another* is not displaced; and all sharp edges must be protected.

Any alterations in the size of the cupboard, required by a larger or smaller stock of tools, could easily be made.

CHAPTER IV.

JOINTING.

Different parts of articles are connected or *jointed* partly by *glue*, *nails*, or *screws*, and partly by the special adaption of the parts themselves, as in *mortising* and *dove-tailing*.

A. Glueing.

The simplest way of jointing two pieces of wood is to introduce between them a connecting medium in liquid form, *i.e.*, *glue*.

Glue is made from the refuse, clippings, etc., of tanneries and glove manufactories. After being subjected to a boiling process, these materials are reduced to a viscous fluid, which solidifies on cooling into a stiffish jelly, which is then cut into thin slices and dried upon nets stretched on frames.

Good glue is known by its light brown or brownish yellow colour; its sparkling transparency; its hardness and elasticity; by the way it breaks off in flakes and whitens in the line of fracture; and by its power of resistance to the dampness of the air. It swells if steeped in cold water, but does not melt even after one or two days' immersion. The ultimate test of good glue is, however, its cementing power.

1. The Preparation of Glue.

The cakes of glue, either entire or in pieces, are first soaked in cold water. After the glue swells it is put in a glue-pot (Fig. 86) and melted by heat. The glue-pot consists of two pans usually made of cast-iron or tin-plate. The larger of these, the *outside pan*, is, when in use, half filled

with water, and the smaller one, the *inside pan* or *glue-pot* proper, in which the glue is placed, rests upon a rim or *flange* round its mouth. This inner pan should always be lined with tin. The water in the outer pan prevents the glue from burning, (an accident which must always be carefully avoided), and as the contents of the glue-pot are surrounded by warm water, they may be kept fluid and fit for use a considerable time after the pan has been removed from the fire.

If glue is wanted *in a hurry*, the cakes may be put in a towel or a similar piece of stuff to keep the glue from being scattered about, and broken to pieces with a hammer. The pieces are then put into the glue-pot and stirred during boiling, to prevent unmelted glue sticking to the bottom. This mode of preparation is quite as good as the preceding.



Fig. 86. Glue Pot (inside pan) and Brush. Outside Pan. $\frac{1}{2}$.

Glue is applied with a strong brush, of which there should be two sizes, one for large surfaces and one for small surfaces, *e.g.*, mortise holes, etc.

Liquid Glue.—The addition of acetic acid to melted glue prevents putrefaction, and, without lessening its cementing power, keeps it liquid at ordinary temperatures. "*Liquid glue*" may be made as follows:—Four parts of good glue are melted in four parts diluted acetic acid, in the outer pan, or

on the top of an oven. One part spirits of wine and a small quantity of alum are then added, and the mixture is kept in a wide-mouthed bottle, the cork of which has a hole to admit the brush.

This glue remains liquid at $+ 14^{\circ}$ to 18° C., and does not solidify until $+ 8^{\circ}$ to 12° C.; it is very convenient for small articles, as it is always ready and in good condition, and its cementing power is quite equal to that of glue prepared in the ordinary way. Its only drawback is that it dries more slowly.

In the case of articles exposed to moisture, the addition of 10 per cent. of boiled linseed oil is advantageous. The glue to which it is added should be hot and strong, and should be stirred till the varnish has been thoroughly mixed. The wood to which this *wood-cement* is applied should be dry and warm, and the pieces should be firmly pressed together until the glue dries.

2. Glueing.

The process of glueing is very simple, but it must be carefully performed to ensure a strong inconspicuous joint. The general rule holds good that the layer of glue shall be so thin that the seam can hardly be seen, and this presupposes that the pieces fit accurately (see page 152), that they are kept in sufficiently close contact while the glue is drying, and that the glue itself does not cool before they are put properly together.

To keep the glue from cooling, the wood should be warmed Warming the wood. as well as the glue, and the operations of applying the latter, putting the pieces together and applying the required pressure, must be rapidly performed. Generally speaking, it is sufficient if one of the wooden surfaces is warmed: thus in dovetailing and slotting the pins only are warmed; in blocking, the blocks only, etc.

The glue, which must be neither too thick nor too thin, is Laying on the glue. laid evenly and quickly, in as small a quantity as possible, over the surface of the wood with the brush.

In the case of pins for mortising, the glue should be thicker than for jointing boards, and the glue is generally applied to the hole as well as to the previously warmed pin, though sometimes only to the latter.

Screwing together is performed either in the bench, which is the simplest method, or in hand-screws, or in a press with wedges. The article must remain under pressure till the glue dries. If the glue is too thick or the wood cold, or if the glue cools before screwing up, the joint will show, and will not be good. A joint of this kind does not look well, and is less durable than one properly glued together.

Making a joint.

The bench pegs or the hand-screw should always be in order before glueing, to save time. Just before the final tightening of the screw, the work should be carefully examined to see if the parts are *in their right places*. If not they must be made to fit. If the staves of a barrel are not in the same plane, the screw must not be loosened, but the stave which is not flush must be hammered into place, and the screws tightened. The work must not again be disturbed till the glue has hardened.

In screwing up finished pieces of work, bits of wood must *always* be put between the work and the bench-pegs or the point of the screw, to prevent marks. When large plane surfaces are glued together, it is necessary to use several cramps to obtain strong enough pressure.

Removal of superfluous glue.

The glue which exudes from the joints of objects which are finished off before glueing, *e.g.*, the inside of a drawer, must be carefully wiped off with a clean sponge or rag dipped in warm water immediately after glueing together, before it completely dries. Care must be taken not to wet the wood unnecessarily.

The better the glue penetrates the pores of the wood, the stronger the joint. Consequently, glue holds better in loose-fibred than in close-grained wood, which presents a hard, smooth surface. Broad surfaces of the latter description are roughened a little before glueing, by drawing a coarse file

over them.* Glue which dries slowly is stronger than that which dries quickly.

A well-fitting joint made with good glue is so strong that, when long boards are joined together, the wood itself generally gives way before the joint. This, however, is not the case when end pieces are joined together, or when the wood is very hard or close-grained. *Strong and weak glue joints.*

Two pieces of wood may be glued together without *cramping* or screwing together, *e.g.*, a block of wood on a plank. The block only is warmed, but glue is laid upon both. The former is then pressed upon the latter, and rubbed backwards and forwards to get rid of the superfluous glue, until it begins to adhere. Care must now be taken that it is in its right place, and is not further disturbed. The two pieces adhere by atmospheric pressure.

B. Nailing.

Sprigs of different lengths and thicknesses are generally used for nailing together slöjd-work, but for large or heavy articles *cut or beat nails* are employed, because their uneven surface is more tenacious, and thus gives greater strength to the joint. Before the nail is hammered in, a hole should be bored with the pin-bit or the bradawl to prevent splitting. The diameter of this hole should not exceed two-thirds of that of the thickest part of the nail, and the nail should be hit straight on the head, to prevent it from bending or going in crooked.

The *firm hold* of the nail in the wood depends partly on the more or less rough nature of its surface, partly on its length and thickness, partly on the kind of wood, and partly on the direction of the nail in relation to the fibres, *i.e.*, whether it is driven into a long board or into an end piece. The strongest joint is made with beat nails in a cross piece ; *The strength of nail-joints*

* There is a special tool for this purpose used in veneering, &c., called the "*toothing-plane*."—TRs.

the weakest with beat sprigs in an end piece. The preliminary boring does not affect the hold of the nail in the wood unless it is too deep or too wide. A hole half the depth and half the diameter of the thickest part of the nail exercises no noticeable influence on the strength of the joint.

Sinking the head of a nail.

Sometimes it is necessary to *sink the nail* under the plane of the surface, that it may not present any obstacle to smoothing up or finishing off the work. After the nail has been hammered in by the ordinary method, a small steel *punch* about 4 inches long and $\frac{1}{4}$ inch thick, tapering to a thick point rather less in diameter than the head of the nail, is used to sink it. The *punch* is placed on the head of the nail, and hammered till the head sinks to the depth required.

Wooden pins are sometimes used for jointing. They are made of straight, split wood, and have four sides, often with bevelled corners, tapering slightly to a blunt point. They are driven into holes previously bored which their bevelled corners enable them to fit closely without splitting the wood. Glue is often added to strengthen their hold. These wooden pins are called *dowels*.

C. Screwing together.

Jointing with wood screws.

Wood-screws, *i.e.*, metal screws with thin, deep, sharp-edged tap-worms, are used for screw-joints. Screws which are gimlet-pointed penetrate the wood more easily than others.

The **wood-screws** used in screw-joints are of different kinds, with half-round, curtailed conical, or square heads. The two first only are used in wood-slöjd. In both, the head of the nail is furnished with a slit for receiving the screw-driver.

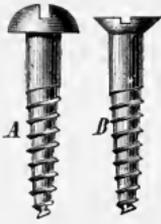


Fig. 87.

Wood-Screws.

A with half-round,
B with conical head.

When *A* (Fig. 87) is used, the head of the screw remains *above* the surface of the wood. In joints made with *B*, the head is made to lie *level with* the surface, for which purpose the hole bored for its reception is afterwards counter-sunk. Wood-screws are made in many lengths from about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch to 3 inches, and of varying thickness. They are very generally used, and are especially useful for articles which require sometimes to be taken apart and put together again.

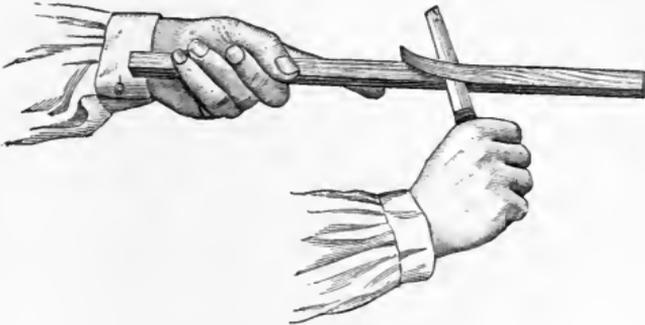
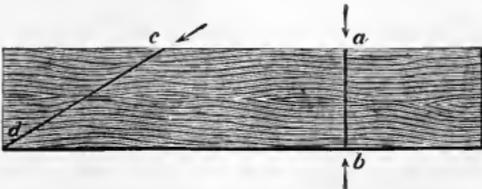
In consequence of their peculiar form, screws give a much stronger and firmer joint than nails, which hold the pieces together simply by friction. A screw cannot be drawn out without unscrewing, unless the wood around it is cut away. The hole bored for the reception of the screw should be as deep as the length of the unwormed portion.

*Strength of
a screw joint*

D. Jointing by means of the formation of the parts of the joint.

The names only of the various kinds of jointing of this nature are given below. A description will be found in Chapter V.

1. *Halving.*
2. *Mitreing.*
3. *Slotting.*
4. *Mortise and Tenon-jointing.*
5. *Groove-jointing.*
6. *Dove-tailing.*
7. *Hooping.*

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
1	<i>Long cut.</i>	<p>To cut a piece of wood in the direction of the length of the fibres; otherwise to cut with the grain.</p> <p>This exercise is the simplest of all the exercises in Slöjd, and consists in cutting the wood so as to produce an approximate level, true, and straight surface.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 88.</p>
2	<i>Cross cut.</i>	<p>To cut a piece of wood at right angles to the fibres.</p> <p>This exercise is rather more difficult than the first. It is accomplished by "truer cutting," as the fibres are not in this case torn apart, but cut through.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 89.</p>

C I S E S.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Knife.	<p>Hold the knife in the right hand and the wood in the left, as shown in accompanying sketch ; and always cut away from the body, keeping the flat surface of the blade as close to the wood as possible, to prevent the edge running into the wood too deeply, and making successive bold slices until the surface is even.</p> <p>To steady and strengthen the hand which holds the wood, and to render the exercise easier, the piece of wood can be rested upon a board laid on the bench.</p>
Knife.	<p>Hold the knife as in Ex. 1, but make a V shaped cut into the wood from each side, cutting deeper and deeper until the cuts meet in the centre, then pare the end level. For the proper position of the body, see Plate I.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
3	<i>Oblique cut.</i>	<p>To cut a piece of wood obliquely to the fibres.</p> <p>This exercise is simply a variation of Ex. 1 and 2. The cut is not made with the grain, nor at right angles to it, but diagonally across it. Its name describes it.</p>
4	<i>Bevel cut.</i>	<p>To bevel the edge of a rectangular block of wood both with and against the fibres; <i>e.g.</i>, a square block of wood could be made octagonal by bevelling the edges.</p>
5	<i>Sawing off.</i>	<p>To saw off a piece of wood at right angles to the fibres. This exercise in Sweden is accomplished with a broad-webbed bow-saw, shown in Fig. 38 (p. 83). The same exercise in England would be done with a hand-saw, shown in Fig. 41 (p. 85).</p>
6	<i>Convex cut.</i>	<p>To cut a piece of wood so as to produce a convex curve.</p> <p>This exercise brings in more delicate handling of the tool than any of the preceding exercises. The cuts are shorter, and the movements all from the wrist.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a rectangular block of wood with horizontal grain lines. A curved line is drawn across the top surface, representing a convex cut. The curve starts at point 'd' on the left edge, rises to a peak at point 'c', and then descends to point 'a' on the right edge. Three arrows point to the curve: one at 'd', one at 'c', and one at 'a'. The bottom right corner of the block is labeled 'b'.</p>

Fig. 90.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Knife.	The knife is held as in Ex. 1 and 2, and the position of the body is as in Plate I. The direction of the cut is shown in Fig. 89 <i>c-d</i> .
Knife.	Hold the knife and proceed as in Ex. 1.
Broad webbed bow-saw. (Hand-saw).	<p>The bow-saw is held as shown in Plate II., with this difference, that the wood is fixed into the vice crosswise, instead of uprightly. The saw is worked with long strokes parallel with the edge of the bench, backwards and forwards, with no more weight in a downward direction on the blade than is sufficient to keep it in its place. The final strokes must be made cautiously, because the wood may easily be split. The teeth of the saw must always point <i>away</i> from the worker.</p> <p>The English hand-saw is worked much in the same way.</p>
Knife.	See Plate I. for position of worker, and method of holding knife; and Fig. 90 (<i>a-b</i>), for example of curve. The knife must be used in the direction of the arrow <i>a-b</i> .

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
7.	<i>Long-sawing.</i> <i>(Rip-sawing.)</i>	To saw up a piece of wood lengthwise. This exercise in Sweden is performed with a bow-saw, Fig. 38 (p. 83). In England the same exercise is done with a hand rip-saw, Fig. 41 (p. 85). It is more difficult than cross-sawing (Ex. 5), because the saw is apt to leave the mark and run between the fibres.
8.	<i>Edge-planing.</i>	To plane a piece of wood, the surface of which is narrower than the plane iron. This exercise is considered the easiest exercise in planing, for this reason, that a narrow surface of not more than 1 in. or 1½ in. wide at the very most is easier to plane than a surface above 2 in. wide. (The width of the plane iron varies from 2 in. to 2½ in. in width.)

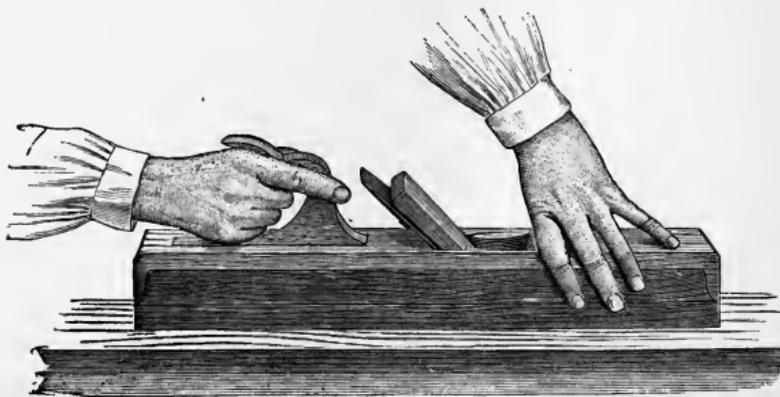


Fig. 91.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Broad webbed bow-saw. (Hand rip-saw.)</p>	<p>For the method of execution with the bow-saw, see Plate II., which shows the wood fixed in the proper position in the bench-vice, the right position of the body, and the right handling of the tool. The saw is moved backwards and forwards in that position.</p> <p>The same position applies to the use of the English hand-saw, and the left hand holds the wood in the same way. The only difference is that the hand-saw has no frame, but simply a handle by which it is gripped.</p> <p>It will be noticed that the bow-saw is held by the lower part of the frame near the blade, and that the feet of the worker are at right angles and a little way apart.</p>
<p>Trying-plane or English jack- plane.</p>	<p>The piece of wood is fastened between the bench pegs, so that it lies firmly and evenly upon the bench. The plane, after being carefully set (<i>i.e.</i>, the cutting edge of the plane iron projecting just the right distance through the sole of the plane), is held as shown in Fig. 91. It is moved backwards and forwards over the surface of the wood, and regulated by the difference in the pressure given by one or other of the hands; <i>e.g.</i>, at the start of the stroke with the plane the pressure is on the front of the plane, but as the stroke is finishing the pressure is transferred to the right hand, which holds the handle.</p> <p>This keeps the plane horizontal and level on the wood. The pressure with the left hand at the start prevents the heel of the plane dropping, and the pressure with the right hand at the finish of the stroke prevents the toe of the plane falling.</p> <p>For position of worker see Plate III.</p>

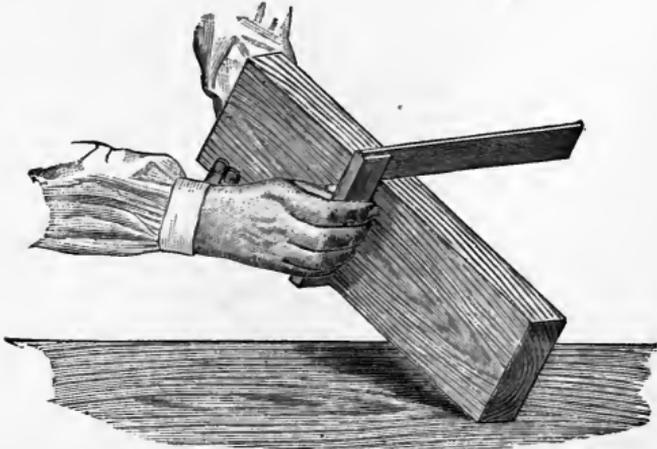
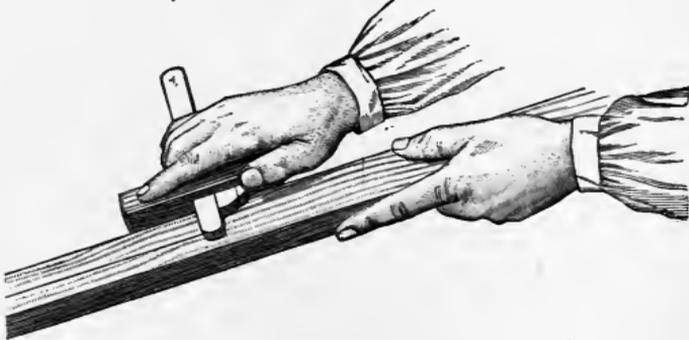
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
9.	<i>Squaring.</i>	<p>To prove whether two plane surfaces in a piece of wood are at right angles. The accompanying sketch (Fig. 92) simply shows the position of the square in testing for a right angle. But before this the square has been used in two different ways to test the broad flat side of the wood first planed. Before the edge can truly be at right angles with the side, the side itself must be level and true, and in testing this the square is turned up and the outer edge of the blade is held on the wood, first lengthwise, and then crosswise. It follows, therefore, that the broader surface of the wood is planed first, and when this surface is true, the edge is planed, and it is then that this special exercise (No. 9) comes in.</p> 

Fig. 92.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Try square.	<p>The inner edge of the stock of the square is held against the side of the wood first planed. The blade rests on the edge, and is moved from end to end of the wood. The test is to observe that the stock and the blade of the square fit exactly on to these two surfaces throughout their length.</p> <p>Hold the wood and the square as shown in Fig. 92, but towards the light, and keeping the stock of the square firmly against the side of the wood, and the blade on the edge, and move from end to end.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
10	<i>Gauging.</i>	<p>To set off a desired thickness or width parallel to the edges of a piece of wood with the marking-gauge.</p> <p>The tool for this exercise is shown in Figs. 21 and 22 (p. 72). It is made of two pieces of wood, one piece sliding through the other. At one end of the thin piece, which is called "the spindle," is a sharp point of steel, and this point scratches a line into the wood at whatever distance it is set from the stock of the gauge, as will be seen in Fig. 93.</p> 
11	<i>Boring with the quill-bit.</i>	<p>To bore a hole of small diameter.</p> <p>The special kind of bit used for this exercise bores both well and quickly <i>across</i> the grain of the wood only, cutting the fibres instead of tearing them apart. For boring <i>with</i> the grain, a bit known as a "nose-bit" should be used. This differs from the quill-bit in having at its extremity a transverse cutter which enables it to be used for boring in the direction of the grain.</p>

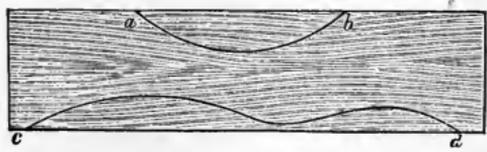
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Marking-gauge.</p>	<p>Nääs method of gauging. The gauge is held as shown in Fig. 93, with the first finger and thumb of the right hand on the stock of the gauge, and the other three fingers round the spindle. The stock (or "fence") of the gauge is held steadily and closely to the faced-up sides of the work, parallel to which the line is to be made, and pulled backwards <i>towards</i> the worker.</p> <p>The English method is to hold the gauge in exactly the same way, but to move it <i>away from</i> the worker. It is generally easier, however, for young boys to gauge towards them.</p>
<p>Brace and quill-bit (Fig. 72 c., p. 110).</p>	<p>The proper position for boring with this tool is shown in Plate IV. The head of the brace is held in the palm of the left hand, and the crank of the brace is held by the middle in the right hand as shown, and it is turned from right to left. It will be observed from the plate that the worker can only see that the tool is boring straight in the direction in which he is facing. It is therefore necessary, in order to bore a straight hole, that he should assume a second position at right angles to the former. This should be done from time to time in boring through a thick piece of wood, <i>i.e.</i>, a few revolutions should be made in one position, and then a few in another.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
12	<i>Face planing.</i>	To plane a piece of wood, the surface of which is broader than the plane iron. The difference between this exercise and Ex. 8 is that the plane is not wide enough to take a shaving off the full width of the wood at one stroke, so that several consecutive strokes have to be made, and the position of the plane changed each time across the surface of the wood.
13	<i>Filing.</i>	To dress up rough surfaces by filing. Several different kinds of wood files are used, as shown on page 105, Fig. 68.
14	<i>Boring with the centre-bit.</i>	To bore a comparatively large hole. This exercise presents no great difficulty beyond that of boring straight, and the difference in pressure required between soft and hard woods.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Trying-plane, or English jack-plane.	<p>The position of the worker is shown in Plate III., and the handling of the tool in Fig. 91.</p> <p>The working is explained under Ex. 8. But in planing a broad piece of wood care has to be taken that the surface is made perfectly "true," and in order to test the truth of a broad surface the plane is laid across it; or, better still, two pieces of wood called "winding lathes" are used, which are shown and explained in Fig. 31, page 77.</p>
File.	<p>When the work to be filed is flat, it is invariably fixed in the bench-vice, and the handle of the tool held in the right hand, the point in the left. The cutting edges of the file only come into play during the forward movement, and care should be taken in marking this movement that one hand does not press more heavily on the tool than the other. The left hand has the advantage at the commencement of the stroke, the right hand at the finish. The pressure should be taken off in drawing the file back. In filing up small cylindrical surfaces, the work should simply rest on the bench, and be turned round and round to the action of the tool. The bench-vice should be used when concave and convex curves over the edge of boards require filing.</p> <p>The <i>general</i> direction of the stroke of the file is obliquely to the fibres of the wood, varying with the kind of work and the character of the surface to be dressed.</p>
Brace and Centre-bit.	For method of working see exercise No. 11.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
15	<i>Convex-sawing.</i>	<p>To saw out a curve following a circular or elliptical line.</p> <p>This special exercise is executed with a turn saw, Fig. 40, page 85; and is confined to work of a simple convex character, <i>e.g.</i>, the cutting of such curves as are found in ellipses and circles.</p>
16	<i>Concave cut.</i>	<p>To cut out a concave shape.</p> <p>Figure 94 clearly shows this exercise.</p> <div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 94.</p>
17	<i>Bevelling.</i>	<p>To bevel the edge of a piece of wood.</p> <p>This exercise occurs wherever the corner of a piece of wood has to be planed off; <i>e.g.</i>, if out of a rectangular block of wood an octagonal prism had to be made, the edges would have to be bevelled or taken off.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Turn-saw.	<p>The work is fixed in the bench-vice, and the saw worked backwards and forwards as described in Exercise No. 5, and shewn in Plate II., except that in this case both hands grasp the frame of the saw. The cut is generally made during the forward movement. In order to saw to the curve marked out, the frame of the turn-saw in working is gradually turned in the direction of the curve. It must in no case be forced, but should work easily and freely.</p>
Knife.	<p>Fig. 94 shows this exercise being worked on the <i>edge of a piece of wood</i>, and just shows the knife as it has been pulled from the right side of the curve down to its lowest edge. To complete the operation the knife must be turned round and worked in exactly the opposite direction to meet the cut already made. If this exercise is being worked on the <i>end of a piece of wood</i>, the knife is used in a different manner. The cut is commenced at the centre of the curve and worked outwards in either direction. During the work the arm is pressed gently against the side of the body, to steady the hand which holds the work.</p>
Trying-plane.	<p>The plane is worked in exactly the same manner, as far as handling goes, as in Fig. 91. The wood is fixed between the bench pegs with the edge to be bevelled off uppermost.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
18	<i>Convex modeling with the plane.</i>	To plane a cylindrical or convex surface. This exercise occurs when anything has to be planed up round; e.g., round rulers, rollers, etc.
19	<i>Sawing with the tenon-saw.</i>	To saw out small notches, joints, and tenons. Exercises with this tool occur frequently in all kinds of fitting, where a larger tool would be too coarse.
20	<i>Wave-sawing.</i>	To saw to a curved line. The tool used in this exercise is a small-webbed bow-saw, which will easily follow any curved line.
		
Fig. 95.		
21	<i>Plane surface cut.</i>	To cut a broad surface with the knife. This exercise differs from Ex. No. 1 only in point of width of wood worked.

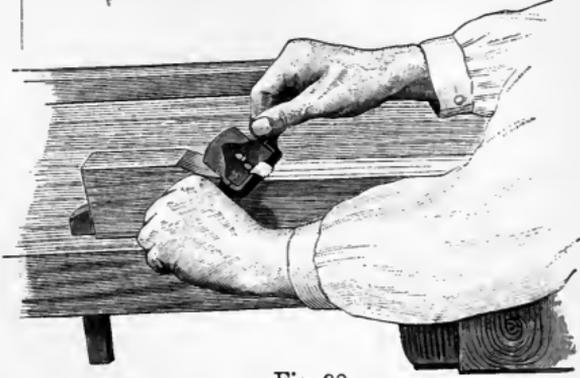
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Smoothing-plane.	The work should be fixed between the bench pegs, and gradually turned round and round to the action of the plane.
Tenon-saw.	In working this saw, no downward pressure should be exerted. The saw should be moved backwards and forwards the whole length of the blade.
Turn-saw.	An explanation of the method of holding and working this tool will be found in Ex. No. 7. The frame of the saw leans to the right or left according to the direction of the curve.
Knife.	Follow the working of Ex. No. 1, gradually levelling down the surface without attempting to slice off large pieces at one stroke.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
22	<i>Scraping.</i>	<p>To finish up surfaces. The tool used in this exercise is fully described in Chap. III, page 106.</p>  <p>The illustration shows two hands, one on each side of a wooden board. The hands are positioned to hold a scraper against the surface of the wood, demonstrating the technique of scraping to finish the surface.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 96.</p>
23	<i>Stop-planing (obstacle-planing).</i>	<p>To plane a piece of wood which presents an obstacle to the full stroke of the plane. This kind of exercise frequently occurs in woodwork. It affords excellent practice in planing. Fig. 97, face (a), fully illustrates the nature of the exercise.</p>  <p>The illustration shows a long, narrow piece of wood with a rectangular notch cut out of one end. The letter 'a' is written on the top surface of the wood, indicating the specific area of interest for the exercise.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 97.</p>
24	<i>Perpendicular chiselling, or paring.</i>	<p>To pare the edges, or otherwise, of a piece of wood to a level surface. This exercise is one of the most important in woodwork. It is of frequent occurrence, and requires great care. The tool used has one side ground perfectly flat, and shows a distinct advance on the knife, which is ground from both sides. The flat side of the chisel constitutes its "guide-principle."</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Scraper.	<p>Fig. 96 shows how the tool should be held. It is pushed forward with the thumbs, which slightly bend it and give it greater hold on the wood. It is worked both with the grain and obliquely to it.</p>
Smoothing-plane.	<p>The work is fixed either in the bench-vice or between the pegs, and the plane is held in the ordinary way, but worked obliquely as it approaches the obstacle, so as just to move past it. Close to the obstacle it may be worked almost directly across the grain.</p>
Firmer chisel.	<p>Plate VI. shows the position of the worker. The chisel should be held in the right hand by the handle. The left hand should both guide the chisel and steady the wood. The right arm should be firmly braced against the body during the paring operation.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
25	<i>Oblique chiselling or paring.</i>	<p>To pare off a piece of wood with the chisel obliquely to the fibres, but in the direction in which they run.</p> <p>This use of the chisel occurs when the edges have to be chamfered off pieces of wood.</p>
26	<i>Gouging with the gouge, and the spoon-iron.</i>	<p>To produce curved depressions of various degrees of depth in a piece of wood.</p> <p>This exercise occurs when anything has to be hollowed out with the gouge, as, e.g. in wooden spoons, etc.</p>
27	<i>Concave-chiselling.</i>	<p>To produce a concave surface.</p> <p>This exercise accomplishes the same end as Ex. 16, except that the material on which the chisel is used is generally thicker.</p>
28	<i>Chopping.</i>	<p>To dress off rough and uneven surfaces.</p> <p>This exercise comes in when any rough wood has to be taken off, which cannot be so easily removed by the saw, and which would be of no use if sawn off.</p>

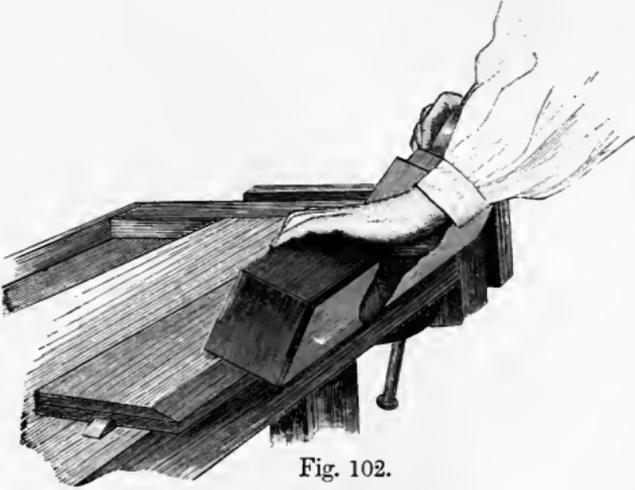
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Firmer chisel.	The work must either be held firmly on the bench with one hand, or fastened between the bench pegs. The flat face of the chisel should be towards the wood. The tool is held generally in the same way as shown in Plate VI.
Gouge and spoon-iron.	Fig. 52, page 92, shows the spoon-gouge and the spoon-iron. In gouging out a deep depression the rough part of the work is done with the gouge and the mallet, the finishing is accomplished without the mallet and with the aid of the spoon-iron.
Firmer chisel.	The handle of the tool is firmly grasped in one hand, and the other hand rests upon the face of the blade to direct its course, which must always be in the direction in which the fibres run. The wood should be made fast in the bench-vice. (See Fig. 95, <i>a—b</i> .)
Axe.	Plate VII., page 183, shows exactly how the wood and the axe should be held for chopping. In no case should the wood be held by the top.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
29	<i>Smoothing or dressing-up with the spokeshave.</i>	<p>To dress up rounded surfaces.</p> 
		<p>Fig. 98.</p>
30	<i>Modelling with the spokeshave.</i>	To model rounded surfaces.
31	<i>Oblique sawing.</i>	To saw off a piece of wood obliquely to the fibres.
32	<i>Oblique planing.</i>	To smooth surfaces in an oblique direction over the fibres.
33	<i>Dressing with the smoothing-plane; or smoothing up.</i>	To produce a smooth and finished surface.
		
		<p>Fig. 99.</p>

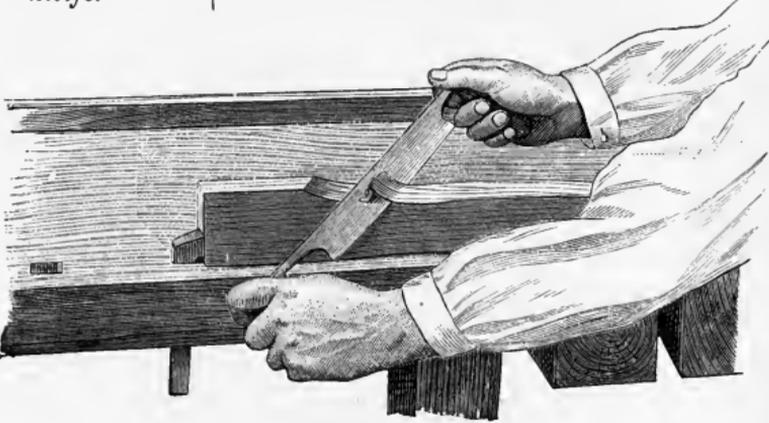
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Spokeshave.	The work is fixed in the bench-vice. The tool is firmly grasped in both hands, with heavy <i>forward</i> pressure from the thumbs, and <i>downward</i> pressure from the fingers. When necessary, the forward direction of working may be reversed. For the position of the worker see Plate VIII.
Spokeshave.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 29.
Broad-webbed bow-saw.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 5, and Fig. 89, <i>c—d</i> .
Smoothing-plane.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 33.
Smoothing-plane.	The plane is held as shown in Fig. 99, and the surface of the wood is carefully planed over; the object being to smooth out all dints and roughness.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
34	<i>End squaring.</i>	To smooth and square the end of a piece of wood.
35	<i>Halving with knife.</i>	<p>To half-lap two pieces of wood together as shown in Fig. 100.</p> <p>This is one of the simplest jointing exercises in woodwork, as well as one of the most useful.</p> <div> </div> <p>Fig. 100.</p>
36	<i>Work in hard wood.</i>	To manipulate very close-grained hard wood.
37(a)	<i>Fitting in pegs.</i>	<p>To joint two pieces of wood together by means of a dowel or pin which fits accurately into a hole bored with centre-bit or auger-bit.</p> <div> </div> <p>Fig. 101.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Smoothing-plane.</p> <p>Knife.</p>	<p>The wood is fastened in the bench-vice with the end to be squared uppermost ; but instead of working the plane right across, as in edge-planing, it is stopped when it reaches just beyond the middle, and is started again from the opposite side. The planing continues from the opposite edges until the end is squared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The work is set out with square, compass, and marking gauge. 2. It is cut out with the knife. 3. The parts are fitted together.
<p>Square; centre-bit; knife.</p>	<p>As a general rule greater strength is required for wood of this kind than for softer wood.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The hole is bored with the centre-bit. 2. After finding the centre of the peg, a circle is described with the bit to be used in order to get the size of the peg. 3. The dowel or pin is set out with the square and made cylindrical with the knife, so that it may fit closely and steadily into the hole.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
37 (b)	<i>Plugging.</i>	To fill up a hole by means of a round plug.
38	<i>Bevelled edge-planing.</i>	To produce a plane surface at oblique angles to two other plane surfaces.
 <p>Fig. 102.</p>		
39	<i>Glueing.</i>	To fix pieces of wood together.
40	<i>Boring with bradawl.</i>	To produce small holes in a piece of wood.
41	<i>Sinking and fixing metal plates, and other metal fittings.</i>	To fix simple metal plates, etc., on a piece of work.
42	<i>Nailing.</i>	To fasten pieces of wood together with nails.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Centre-bit ; knife; firmer chisel.</p> <p>Trying-plane.</p>	<p>The centre-bit used for the hole is used for marking out the size of the plug, and the fitting is done with the knife and chisel.</p> <p>The exercise is performed according to the directions given in Ex. No. 17, with this exception, that the work is laid flat on the bench, and the plane is held obliquely at the angle required. See Fig. 102.</p>
Bradawl.	<p>See Chap. IV., pp. 121, 122.</p> <p>If the bradawl is not chisel-pointed, as shown on page 112, Fig. 75, it is simply pressed into the wood and worked round and round ; but if it is chisel-pointed it should be pressed in with the point across the fibres to avoid splitting.</p>
Screw-driver, firmer chisel, bradawl.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If the plate, etc., is to be sunk, the firmer chisel is used. 2. The plate is screwed on with the screw-driver, care being taken that the screw passes right down into the wood.
Hammer.	See jointing, Chapter IV., pp. 123, 124.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
43	<i>Punching.</i>	To sink a nail-head below the surface of the wood.
44	<i>Bevelling with the draw-knife.</i>	To produce a broad bevel in the same direction as the fibres run.
		
Fig. 103.		
45	<i>Perpendicular gouging.</i>	To produce a concave excavation, perpendicular to a plane surface.
46	<i>Plain jointing.</i>	To plane pieces of wood intended to be jointed by glueing.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Punch, hammer.	The punch is held steadily on the head of the nail, and struck sharply with the hammer ; otherwise it may slip aside and make disfiguring holes in the work.
Draw-knife.	The article is screwed into the bench, and the tool, held firmly by both handles, is worked steadily over the wood. The exercise is rendered considerably easier if the draw-knife is held obliquely, <i>i.e.</i> , if the one end is somewhat in advance of the other. If contrary wood is encountered, the work should, if possible, be turned to allow the knife to cut in the direction of the fibres. [The face of the tool should be held towards the worker, with the bevelled edge on the work.]
Gouge with edge on the convex side.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 24.
Trying-plane.	The greatest care is required in plain jointing in order that the surfaces which are to be united may fit accurately. The directions given in No. 8 must be followed. The trying-plane should be very finely set for this exercise, in order that it may remove very thin shavings. The angle which the edge makes with the side of the work must be frequently tested with the square ; the straightness of the edge must also be tested by the eye. The second piece of wood is treated in the same way, and when it is ready, the edge of the first piece is placed

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
	<i>Plain jointing, continued.</i>	
47	<i>Dove-tail clamping.</i>	<p>To insert a clamp in a broad piece of wood, to prevent warping.</p>  <p>Fig. 104.</p>
48	<i>Oblique gouging.</i>	<p>To gouge a piece of wood in the direction of the fibres, but obliquely to them.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Compass ; square ; marking- point ; bevel ; marking- gauge ; knife ; tenon-saw ; groove-saw ; firmer chisel ; old woman's tooth-plane ; jack-plane ; trying-plane.</p>	<p>upon it for trial. If the joint is accurate, the two surfaces will touch at all points, and when placed against the light will not allow a single ray to pass through. If any light shines through, the parts which are too high must be carefully planed down with long, steady strokes. If two or more planks are to be jointed for broad work, the surfaces must lie in the same plane, and this must be tested by placing against them the straight-edge or the blade of the square.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove for the clamp is set out with the compass, square, marking-point, bevel, and marking-gauge ; and a start for the saw is made with the knife. 2. It is cut out with the tenon-saw, or groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane. 3. The clamp is made ready with the jack-plane and the trying-plane, care being taken that it fits accurately all round.
<p>Gouge.</p>	<p>For method of execution see No. 25, with this difference, that the gouge is used instead of the firmer chisel.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
49	<i>Chamfering.</i>	To chamfer the edges of a piece of wood. Chamfering is a simple way of ornamenting woodwork. The edges of rails and styles of doors nearest the panels are often chamfered, and the chamfer is generally stopped at a little distance from the intersection of the style and the rail. There are various ways of stopping chamfers, the most common being the "mitre stop" and the "curve-stop."
50	<i>Circular sawing.</i>	To saw out a circular shape.
51	<i>Screwing together, or fixing with screws.</i>	To fasten two pieces of work together by means of screws.
52	<i>Modelling with the draw-knife.</i>	To produce a rounded surface of large extent.
53	<i>Planing across the grain.</i>	To plane up a broad surface across the grain.
54	<i>Wedge planing with smoothing-plane.</i>	To plane an article not only in the direction of the fibres, but obliquely to them (or to form an oblique object).
55	<i>Planing with round-plane.</i>	To dress up broad concave surfaces.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Firmer chisel.	Set out the chamfer with the rule and pencil and try-square. (The use of the gouge in this exercise is objectionable, as it destroys the angle of the chamfer). Using the bevelled side of the chisel downwards, roughly cut away the waste wood ; then with the face of the chisel towards the wood, steadily pare the chamfer from end to end. If the stop is mitred, the face side of the chisel must be used in cutting it ; if curved, the bevelled side, and the tool must be worked as a lever, the right hand pulling the handle back and the left acting as a kind of fulcrum. In both cases the operation ought to be performed with one cut.
Turn-saw.	The piece of wood is fastened into the back bench-vice, and the saw is used according to the directions given in Ex. No. 15.
Screwdriver ; pin-bit.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 41, and also jointing, Chap. IV., p. 124.
Draw-knife.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 44.
Trying-plane.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 12.
Smoothing- plane.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 33.
Round-plane.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 33. To produce a good result the plane must be worked very smoothly and steadily.

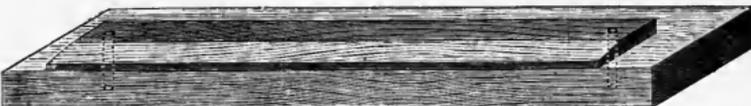
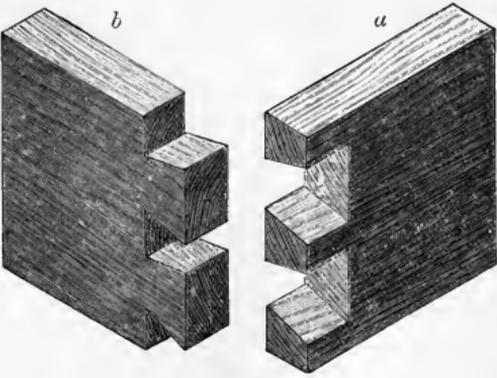
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
56	<i>Fixing with wooden pegs, for planing thin wood.</i>	To fix down, by means of wooden pegs, a thin piece of wood on the surface of a larger piece, in order to plane the former. 
57	<i>Single dove-tailing at right angles.</i>	To dove-tail two pieces of wood together by means of one dove-tail pin. 

Fig. 105.

Fig. 106.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Pin-bit; knife; hammer.</p>	<p>Care must be taken that the under piece is level. The wood to be planed is placed on it, and holes are drilled with the pin-bit, close to each end of the upper piece, <i>through to the under piece</i>. Suitable pins are then driven into these holes, and a stable foundation is thus provided for the work of the plane. See Fig. 105.</p>
<p>Compass; square; marking- point; bevel; cutting- gauge; knife; tenon-saw; groove-saw; firmer chisel; old woman's tooth-plane.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove is set out with compass, square, marking-point, bevel, and cutting-gauge, and a start is made for the saw with the knife. 2. It is cut out with the tenon-saw or groove-saw, firmer-chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane. 3. The clamp is set out with the cutting-gauge, and cut out with the knife. <p>Care must be taken that the dove-tail fits accurately. See Fig. 106.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
58	<i>Common dove-tailing.</i>	<p>To "corner joint" by dove-tailing. Dove-tailing of this kind occurs in all sorts of carpentry and cabinet work. It is both a strong and a neat method of jointing, requiring neither nails nor screws to hold it together. It is most commonly used for boxes and drawers.</p>  <p>The diagram illustrates a dovetail joint. On the left, labeled 'b', is a wooden block with a dovetail-shaped hole (the socket). On the right, labeled 'a', is a wooden block with a dovetail-shaped protrusion (the pin). The two pieces are shown separated, demonstrating how they fit together.</p> <p>Fig. 107.</p> <p>Fig. 107 shows the joint open ; (a) the "pins." (b) the "sockets" into which the pins are fitted.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Cutting-gauge ; compass ; bevel ; square ; dove-tail saw ; marking- point ; firmer chisel.	<p>In the first place, the pieces of wood to be dove-tailed have to be carefully planed to thickness and width, and squared at the ends. Then the cutting-gauge has to be set to the thickness of the pieces planed, and gauge lines marked on both faces and edges of each piece, at a distance from the end of the wood corresponding to its thickness. Then the size and shape of the pins, Fig. 107 (a), have to be set out on the end of the wood with compass, bevel, and square. The pins are cut out with the dove-tail saw and firmer chisel, the saw cutting with the grain of the wood, and the chisel across it. After the pins have been made they are held down on the piece of wood intended for the sockets, Fig. 107 (b), in the position in which they have to be inserted, and their shapes accurately marked off on to one of the faces of the other piece of wood. These lines are continued at right angles across the end of the wood with the square. The sockets are cut out with the dove-tail saw and small firmer chisel. The two pieces are then carefully fitted together.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
59	<i>Square shooting, or planing with shooting-board.</i>	To plane a narrow piece of wood across the grain by means of the shooting-board. Fig. 108 shows exactly the best way of handling the plane and holding the wood and using the shooting-board.
		
Fig. 108.		
60	<i>Hollowing out, or scooping out with gouge.</i>	To produce narrow concave depressions, or to hollow out with the gouge.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Trying-plane ; shooting- board.	The shooting-board is fixed between the bench-pegs, and the wood and plane held as shown in Fig. 108. The plane should be carefully "set," and sharp. See page 67 for a full description of the shooting board.
Gouge.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 26.

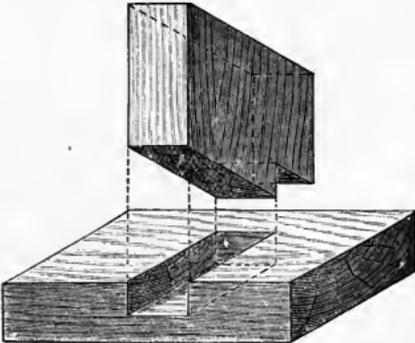
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
61	<p><i>Axle fitting.</i> <i>[This exercise only applies to one Swedish model, i.e., the shuttle.—Trs.]</i></p>	To fit an axle into a hole.
62	<p><i>Housing, or square grooving.</i></p>	<p>To divide boxes, &c., into two or more rectangular portions by means of pieces of wood.</p> <p>Fig. 109 shows this exercise open.</p> 
63	<p><i>Long oblique planing.</i></p>	To plane a long bevelled edge.
64	<p><i>Setting out.</i></p>	To set out divisions in a piece of work.

Fig. 109.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Compass; bradawl; firmer chisel.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The axle is set out with the compass. 2. The hole and the slot are made with the bradawl and chisel.
Compass; square; marking-gauge; saw; firmer chisel; smoothing-plane.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove is set out by means of the compass, square, and marking-gauge. 2. It is cut out with the saw and firmer chisel. 3. The tenon or tongue, <i>i.e.</i>, the piece which is run into the groove, is squared at the end, and the notch set out with the marking-gauge. 4. It is fitted in by means of the smoothing-plane.
Trying-plane.	For method of execution see Ex. No. 8.
Compass; marking-point; square.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The length is divided with the compass, first into larger, and then into smaller parts. 2. The lines are drawn with the marking-point at right angles to the edge of the object. Great accuracy is required in marking off the divisions.

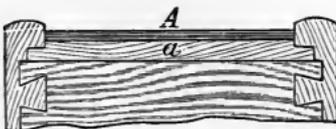
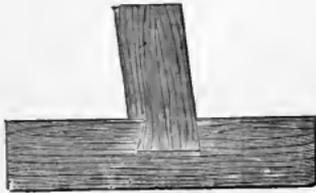
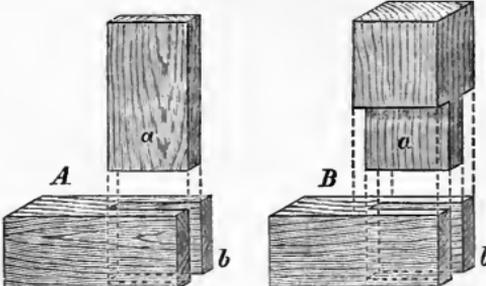
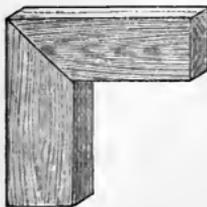
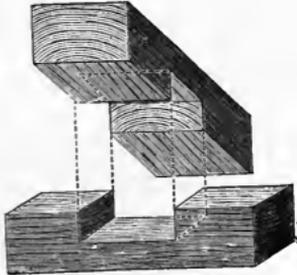
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
65	<i>Panel grooving.</i>	<p>To make grooves for the insertion of panels, &c.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a cross-section of a wooden board with a central groove. The groove is formed by two parallel lines, labeled 'A' at the top and 'a' at the bottom. The board is supported by two vertical blocks on either side.</p>
66	<i>Glueing with aid of hand-screw.</i>	<p>To glue together with the aid of the hand-screw.</p>
67	<i>Sawing with compass (or keyhole) saw.</i>	<p>To saw out a hole in a piece of wood. For description see page 86.</p>
68	<i>Oblique edge-grooving.</i>	<p>To join two pieces of wood together by means of a single dove-tail, at an obtuse angle.</p>  <p>The diagram shows a cross-section of a wooden board with a vertical groove cut into it. A vertical piece of wood is inserted into the groove, forming a single dove-tail joint at an obtuse angle.</p>

Fig. 111.

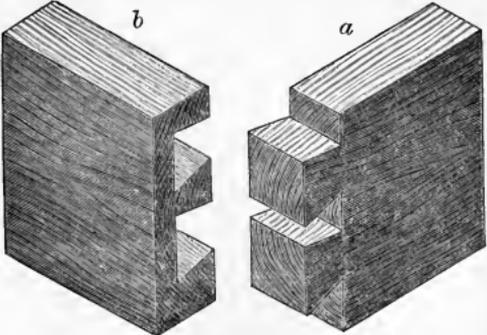
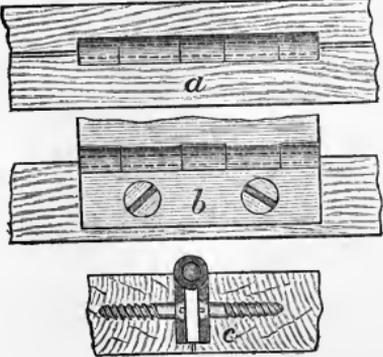
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Cutting-gauge ; knife ; firmer chisel ; (plough).	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove is set out with the cutting-gauge. 2. It is cut out with the knife and the firmer chisel. (In the case of many objects the plough may be employed with advantage to cut out the groove.)
Handscrew.	<p>Before the glue is applied to the joint, the parts must fit accurately ; otherwise the pressure of the handscrew will be of little service. A piece of wood should be laid between the work and the screw to prevent injury to the surface of the article, and also to distribute the pressure more equally. See Chap. IV., p. 119.</p>
Centre-bit ; compass-saw.	<p>Two holes are bored in the piece of work with the centre-bit. The article is then fastened vertically into the bench, and the saw is worked from one hole to the other, following lines previously set out. (In the case of small articles, use may be made of a turn-saw, the blade of which is detachable at one end.)</p>
Compass ; square ; marking- point ; bevel ; cutting-knife ; gauge ; tenon-saw or groove-saw ; firmer chisel ; old woman's tooth-plane ; smoothing- plane.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove is set out with the compass, square, marking-point, bevel, and cutting-gauge ; and a start for the saw is made with the knife. 2. It is cut out with the tenon-saw or groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane. 3. The required form of the end of the dove-tail is set out with the cutting-gauge and the bevel, and it is bevelled with the smoothing-plane. 4. The clamp is cut out with the knife. 5. The parts are fitted together.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
69	<i>Slotting.</i>	<p>To join two pieces of wood, of which one is thinner than the other, in such a manner that the former slots into the latter at a right angle, Fig. 112. <i>B</i> is sometimes called a corner bridle joint.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 112.</p>
70	<i>Dove-tailing in thick wood.</i>	<p>To make a rectangular corner-joint by dove-tailing two pieces of thick wood. This kind of dove-tailing is used for framing, etc.</p>
71	<i>Mitreing.</i>	<p>To make an end-joint with two pieces of wood at an angle of 45°.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 113.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Square ; mortise-gauge ; tenon-saw (or dove-tail saw) ; firmer chisel ; mallet.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The tenon (<i>Aa</i>) and (<i>Ba</i>) and the slot (<i>Bb</i>) are set out with the square and the mortise-gauge. 2. The slot (<i>Bb</i>) is cut down with the tenon (or dove-tail saw), and cut out with a coarse firmer chisel (or mortise-chisel), by aid of the mallet. 3. The tenon (<i>Ba</i>) is made with the tenon (or dove-tail saw) and the firmer chisel. It is called a shoulder tenon. The tenon (<i>Aa</i>) is simply fitted into the slot with the smoothing-plane. It is called an unshouldered tenon. 4. The parts are fitted together, and, if necessary, the firmer chisel is used.
<p>Cutting-gauge ; compass ; bevel ; square ; dove-tail saw ; marking-point ; firmer chisel.</p>	<p>For method of execution see Ex. No. 58 ; but note that still greater accuracy is required, because exercises with the saw and the firmer chisel are always more difficult when the thickness of the wood either falls under a certain limit, or exceeds it. (Fig. 107.)</p>
<p>Square ; compass ; firmer chisel ; smoothing-plane.</p>	<p>For method of execution see Ex. No. 25. The completion of the joint depends on the nature of the object in which the exercise occurs. It may require mortising, gluing, nailing, screwing together with wood screws, etc. When the object is large, the smoothing-plane is used in mitreing. [The English method of making this mitre is by means of a mitre-box and shooting-board, in which case the saw and trying-plane are used.—Trs.]</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
72	<i>Common mortise and tenon.</i>	To join by means of a mortise and tenon.
73	<i>Half-lapping.</i>	<p>To joint together two pieces of wood by half-lapping the broad sides together, <i>i.e.</i>, by cutting half the depth of the wood away from each.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 114.</p>
74	<i>Rebating.</i>	<p>To make a rebate.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 115.</p>
75	<i>Graving with V-tool or parting tool (fluting).</i>	To hollow out depressions or edges.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Square; mortise-gauge; mortise-chisel; mallet; tenon saw.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The mortise is set out by means of the square and the mortise-gauge. 2. It is cut out with the mortise-chisel, with the aid of the mallet. 3. The tenon is cut out with tenon-saw and firmer chisel. 4. The parts are fitted together, the firmer chisel being employed when necessary.
Square; marking-point; marking-gauge; tenon-saw; firmer chisel.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The half-lapping parts are set out with the square, marking-point, and marking-gauge. 2. They are cut out with tenon-saw and firmer chisel. 3. The parts are fitted together with the aid of the chisel.
Marking-gauge; knife; firmer chisel.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The breadth and thickness of the rebate are set out with the marking-gauge. 2. It is cut out with the knife and the firmer chisel. [This holds good only of the small rebates which occur in Slöjd carpentry. The plough and the rebate-plane are used for larger work.—Trs.]
Parting-tool.	<p>The object is screwed tightly into the bench, and the parting-tool is wielded with a steady hand.</p>

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
76	<i>Half-lap dove-tailing.</i>	<p>To produce a rectangular end-joint by dove-tailing together two pieces of wood, so that the dove-tailing does not show on one side. To do this, one-third of the wood is not cut through on the side where the pins are. The socket piece is cut right through, and dove-tailed in the ordinary way.</p> <p>Drawer fronts are dove-tailed in this way.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 116.</p>
77	<i>Hinge-sinking, or fixing hinges.</i>	 <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 117.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Cutting-gauge; compass; bevel; square; tenon-saw (dove-tail saw); mark- ing-point; firmer chisel.</p>	<p>The general method of working is the same as in common dove-tailing, Ex. No. 58; but the cutting-gauge requires setting twice instead of once. It is first set to two-thirds of the thickness of the pin-piece (<i>a</i>), and used across the end of this piece, and then across the sides and edges of the socket-piece (<i>b</i>). Then it is altered and set to the thickness of the socket-piece, and marked across the inside face of (<i>a</i>). After gauging, the pins are set out with the bevel and marking-point and square, and cut out with the dove-tail saw and firmer chisel. As the wood is not cut quite through, as in common dove-tailing, perpendicular chiselling has to be resorted to with wood fixed endways up in the bench vice (see Ex. No. 24). The sockets are made as in Ex. No. 58.</p>
<p>Square; firmer chisel; brad- awl; screw- driver.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The position of the hinge is decided on and set out. 2. The depth to which the hinge has to be sunk is taken and gauged. 3. This part is then cut out with the firmer chisel. 4. For screwing on, see Ex. No. 41.

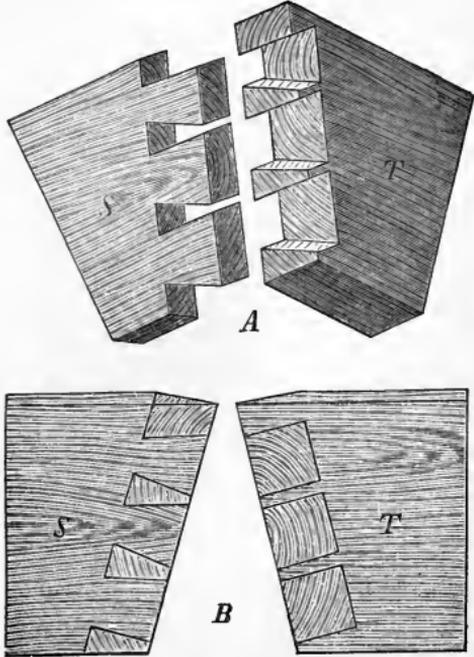
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
78	<i>Lock-fitting.</i>	
79	<i>Oblique dovetailing.</i>	<p>To make a rectangular end-joint with oblique pieces of wood.</p>  <p>The diagram illustrates the construction of a rectangular end-joint using oblique pieces of wood. It is divided into three parts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Part A: A 3D perspective view of two rectangular blocks, labeled 'S' and 'T', joined together. Block 'S' is on the left and block 'T' is on the right. They are connected by three horizontal dovetail-shaped pieces that fit into corresponding slots in both blocks. Part B: Two 2D cross-sectional views of the joint. The left view shows block 'S' with three dovetail-shaped pieces protruding from its right side. The right view shows block 'T' with three corresponding dovetail-shaped slots on its left side. The dovetail pieces are shown fitting into these slots. </p>

Fig. 118.

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Pin-bit; firmer chisel; knife; bradawl; screwdriver; compass-saw.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The position of the lock is decided on. 2. The place is cut out with the pin-bit and the firmer chisel to a depth which permits the metal plate to lie on the same plane as the wood. 3. The hole for the key is cut out with the centre-bit, knife, and chisel. (In larger work with the compass-saw.) 4. For screwing on, see Ex. No. 41.
Bevel; dove-tail saw; compass; square; tenon-saw; firmer chisel; smoothing-plane.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Set out the angle at the ends with the bevel, and saw off. 2. Bevel off the edges to correspond with the angle at the ends of the adjacent sides. 3. To get the angle in the <i>horizontal</i> plane at the ends, use the square in the following way: Place the face against the side of the wood, and let the blade rest flat on the plane of the bevelled edge. Then draw the line, and plane off. 4. The required thickness of each piece is set out with the cutting-gauge. 5. The pins are set out at right angles to the oblique end with the compass, bevel, and square. 6. They are made with the dove-tail saw and the firmer chisel. <p>[Another method of working this joint is by means of a prepared shooting-board, by which the two angles at the ends can be obtained at once.</p> <p>It may also be mentioned that in the English method of oblique dove-tailing, the dove-tail pins run in the same direction as the grain, or obliquely to it, and are consequently stronger. There are theoretical reasons why this method is not followed at Nääs.—Trs.]</p>

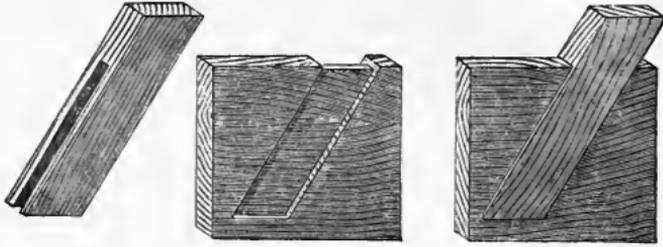
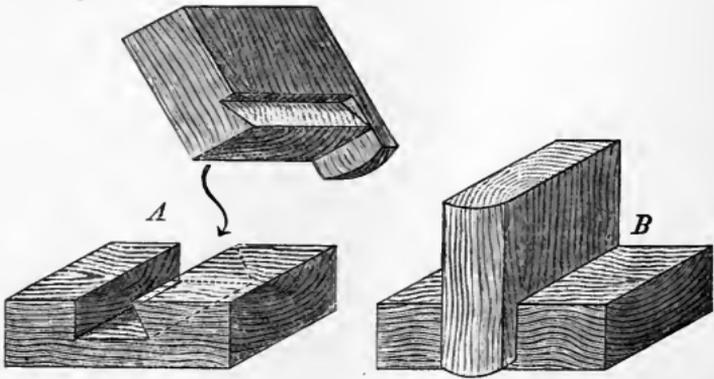
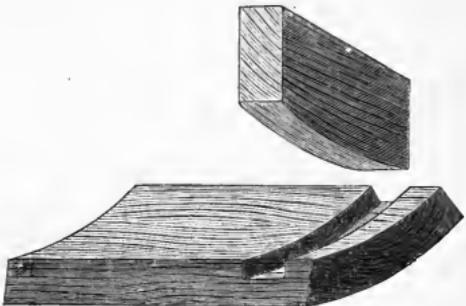
Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
80	<i>Oblique slotting.</i>	To make an oblique angled joint with a pin and a slot. 
81	<i>Notched dove-tailing (half concealed edge grooving).</i>	To insert a dove-tail, the outer edge of which conceals the groove, into a piece of wood. 

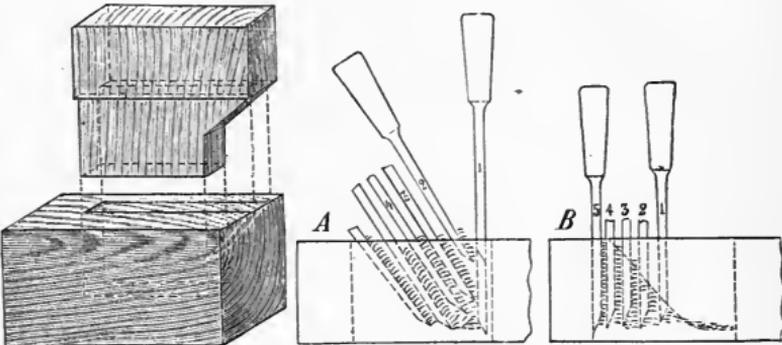
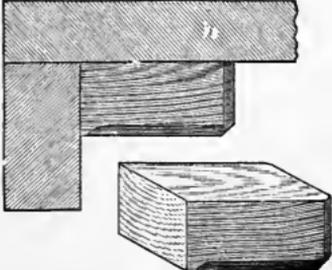
Fig. 119.

Fig. 120.

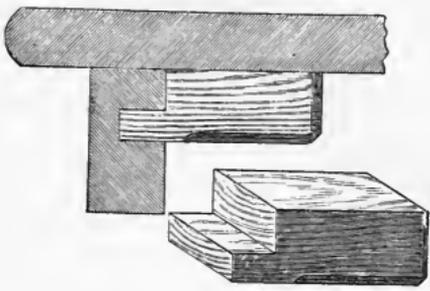
Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Compass ; square ; bevel ; marking- gauge ; knife ; firmer chisel ; dove-tail saw .	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The slot is set out with compass, square, and bevel. 2. The depth of the groove is set out with the marking-gauge, and cut out with the knife and firmer chisel. 3. The slot is sawn out with the dove-tail saw, and cut out with the firmer chisel. 4. The parts are fitted together with the aid of the firmer chisel.
Compass ; square ; mark- ing-point ; bevel ; cut- ting gauge ; knife ; tenon- saw or groove- saw ; firmer chisel ; old woman's tooth-plane ; dove-tail saw .	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The groove is set out with compass, square, marking-point, bevel, and cutting-gauge ; and cut out with knife, tenon-saw or groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane. 2. The shape of the dove-tail is set out with square and cutting-gauge, and cut out with dove-tail saw and knife. 3. The parts are fitted together with the aid of the knife.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
82	<i>Concave modelling with plane (hollowing with plane).</i>	To produce a concave surface with the plane.
83	<i>Staving.</i>	<p>To fix concave-shaped pieces of wood or staves to a curvilinear bottom piece, to make a barrel or bucket.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 121.</p>
84	<i>Hooping.</i>	<p>To fix iron hoops round a barrel or bucket, to hold the staves together. (The wooden hoops frequently seen are not suitable for Slöjd work.)</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Round plane.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The required curve is set out at both ends. 2. The shape is produced by means of the jack-plane and the round plane. (See Fig. 121.)
Compass; bow-saw; spoke-shave; bevel; marking-point; marking-gauge; knife; firmer chisel; trying-plane; smoothing-plane; bradawl.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The bottom is made in the shape required. 2. The edge of the bottom is bevelled to the angle required for the sides of the article. 3. The position and breadth of the groove are set out with the marking-point. 4. The necessary inclination of the sides of the staves is determined by the bevel. 5. The depth of the groove is set out with the marking-gauge, and cut out with the knife and the firmer chisel. 6. The edges of the staves are planed and fitted together. 7. The staves are held together by means of wooden pins inserted into the edges from the inside.
Cold chisel; punch; hammer; set hammer.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The length of the hoop is taken and cut off with the cold chisel. 2. A hole is made with the punch and hammer about half an inch from each end. 3. The hoop is rivetted by means of a rivet, the head of which is larger than the hole. 4. The head of the rivet is then made to rest on a block of metal, and the rivet itself is hammered until a head is formed on the other side. 5. The hoop is hammered from the inside of the article as it rests on the block, and thus made to fit. 6. The hoops are put on from the narrowest portion of the article, and driven home by blows from the set hammer.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
85	<i>Concealed tenoning.</i>	<p>To joint two pieces of wood together at right angles by means of a concealed or haunched tenon.</p> <p>Table rails are jointed to the legs in this way.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 122 a. Fig. 122 b.</p>
86	<i>Blocking.</i>	<p>To strengthen by means of blocks.</p> <p>N.B.—In the illustration, the fibres of the block are accidentally shown running in the wrong direction.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Fig. 123.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
Square; mortise gauge; firmer chisel; mortise chisel; mallet; bow-saw; tenon-saw.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The tenon and the mortise are set out at right angles. 2. The breadth of the mortise and the thickness of the tenon are set out with the mortise gauge. 3. The mortise is cut out with the mortise chisel. 4. The tenon is made with the bow-saw, firmer chisel, and tenon-saw. 5. The parts are fitted together with the help of the firmer chisel.
Dove-tail saw; firmer chisel; square.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The piece to be strengthened is held close to the other piece with the handscrew. 2. The blocks are made with the dove-tail saw and the chisel. 3. The blocks are warmed, glued, and put into their places. 4. Before the handscrew is taken away, the glue must be quite dry.

Number of Exercise.	Name of Exercise.	Purpose and Description of Exercise.
87	<i>Mortised blocking.</i>	<p>To strengthen by means of mortised blocks. [Sometimes called "button blocks."—TRs.]</p>  <p>Fig. 124.</p>
88	<i>Up and down sawing.</i>	<p>To divide a long piece of wood into small pieces.</p>

Tools required.	Directions for Work.
<p>Square; marking-gauge; firmer chisel; dove-tail saw.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The mortise in the rail is set out at right angles with the square and the marking-gauge, and cut out with the firmer chisel. 2. The tenon on the block is set out in accordance with the size of the mortise, with the square and the marking-gauge; cut out with the dove-tail saw, and fitted with the firmer chisel. 3. Previous to the blocking, the object to be fixed is held in position with the handscrew. 4. The blocks are warmed and glued on the two sides next the object, and put in their places.
<p>Broad-webbed bow-saw.</p>	<p>The plank is placed on the bench and held in place by a hand-screw.</p> <p>The blade of the saw is set almost at right angles to the plane of the frame, and the handle is grasped by one hand, while the other holds the upper end of the side arm, and the saw is worked vertically with long easy strokes, with the blade at right angles to the plane surface of the plank.</p>



Plate I. Position: Convex Cut.

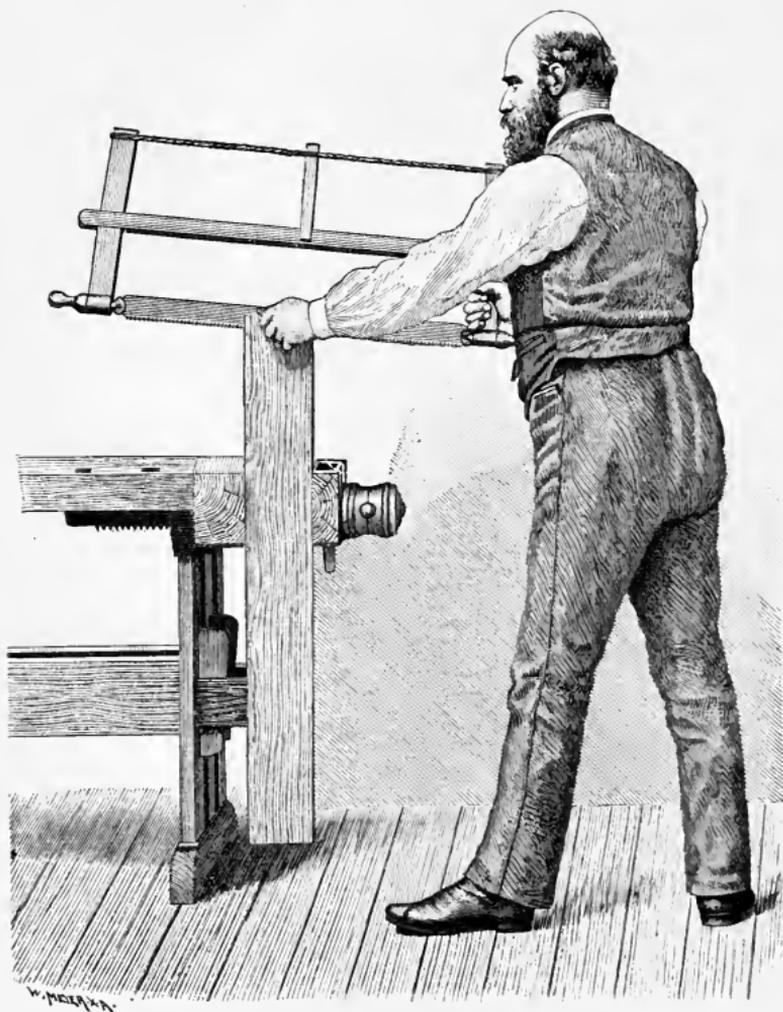


Plate II. Position: Long-sawing

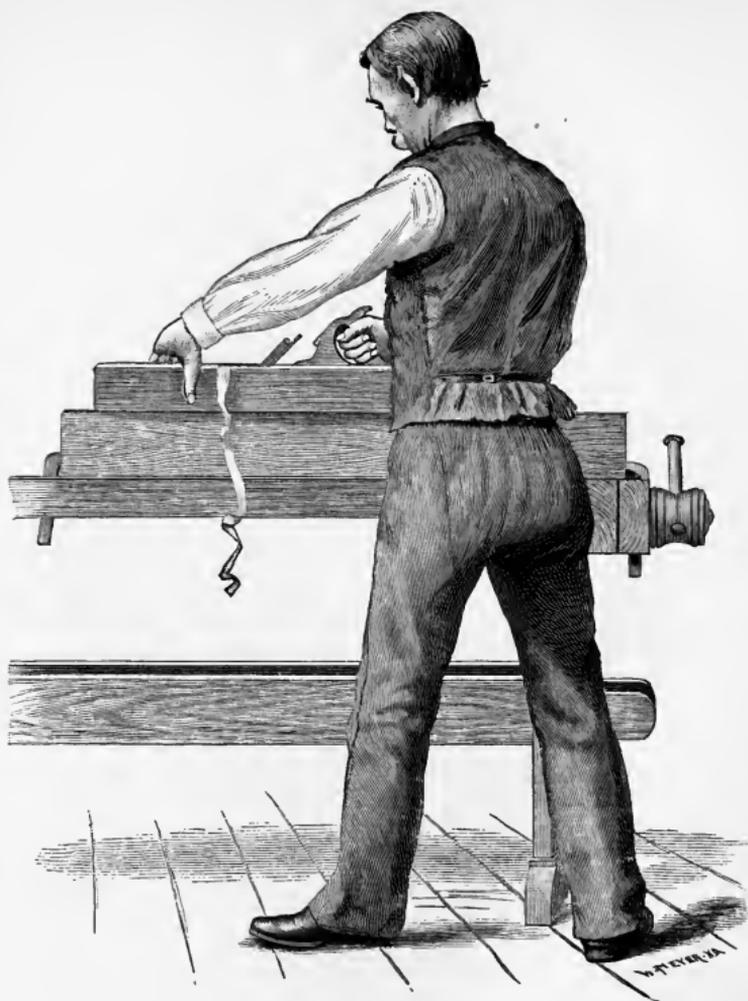


Plate III. Position: Edge-planing.

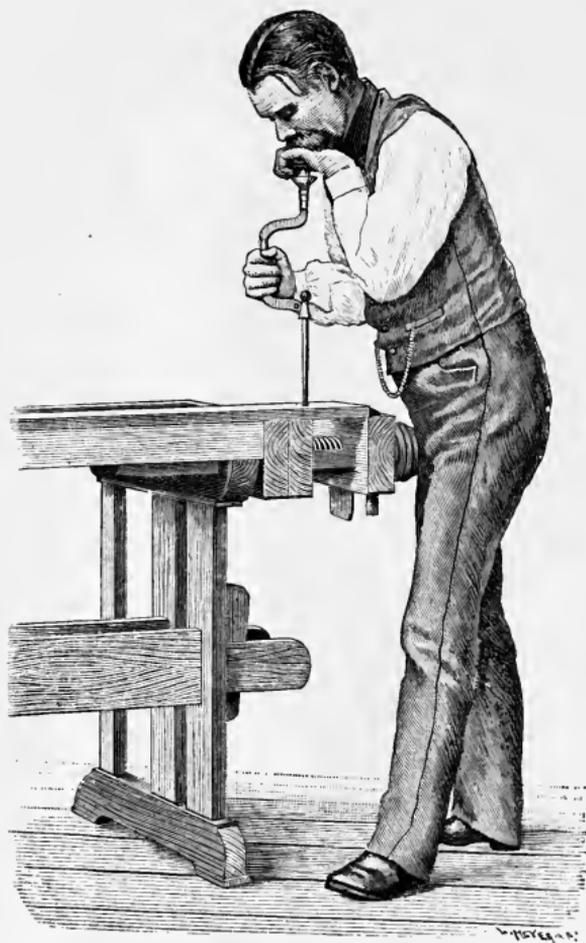


Plate IV. Position: Perpendicular boring with the brace.



Plate V. Position: Horizontal boring with the brace.



Plate VI. Position: Perpendicular chiselling.

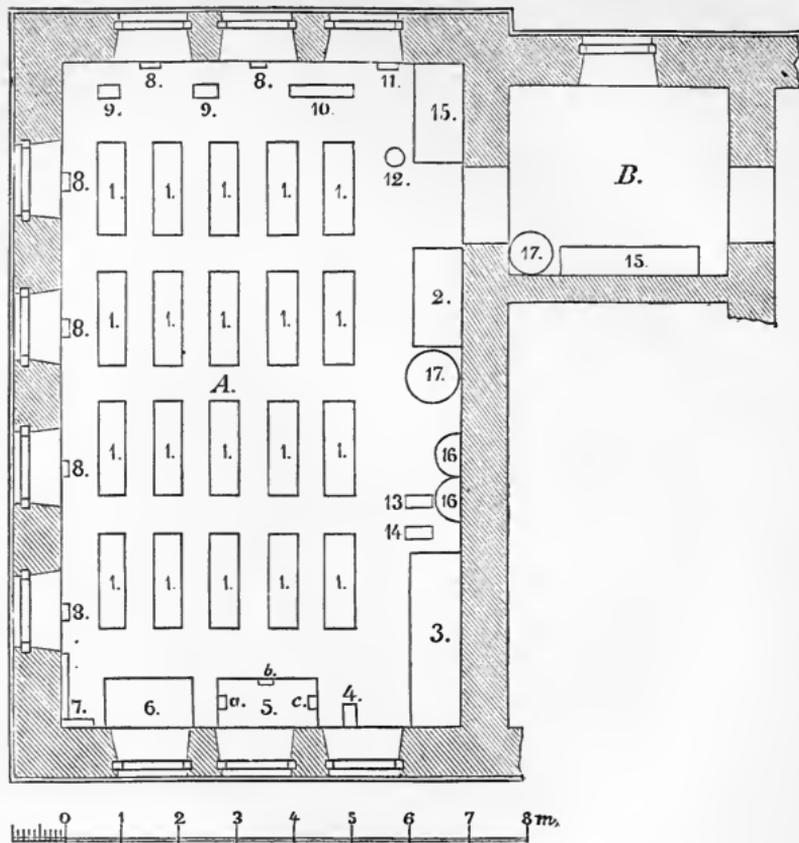


Plate VII. Position: Chopping.



Plate VIII. Position: Smoothing, &c., with the spokeshave.

Plate IX. Plan of Slöjd-room in Katarina Elementary School, Stockholm.



A. Slöjd room.

1. Benches.
2. Cupboard with two divisions :
(1) for tools ; (2) for models.
3. Cupboard with two divisions :
(1) for unfinished work.
(2) for finished articles.
4. Teacher's desk.
5. Cupboard :
a. Iron vice.
b. Iron saw-file vice.
c. Anvil.
6. Lathe.
7. Racks for hand-screws and shooting-boards.

8. Vices for rough work.

9. Boring-stools.
 10. Saw-bench.
 11. Glue-pot
 12. Chopping-block.
 13. Flat grindstone.
 14. Revolving grindstone.
 15. Wood-racks.
 16. Wash-hand basins.
 17. Stoves.
- 3 racks for saws are introduced between the windows on the long wall.

B. Lobby.

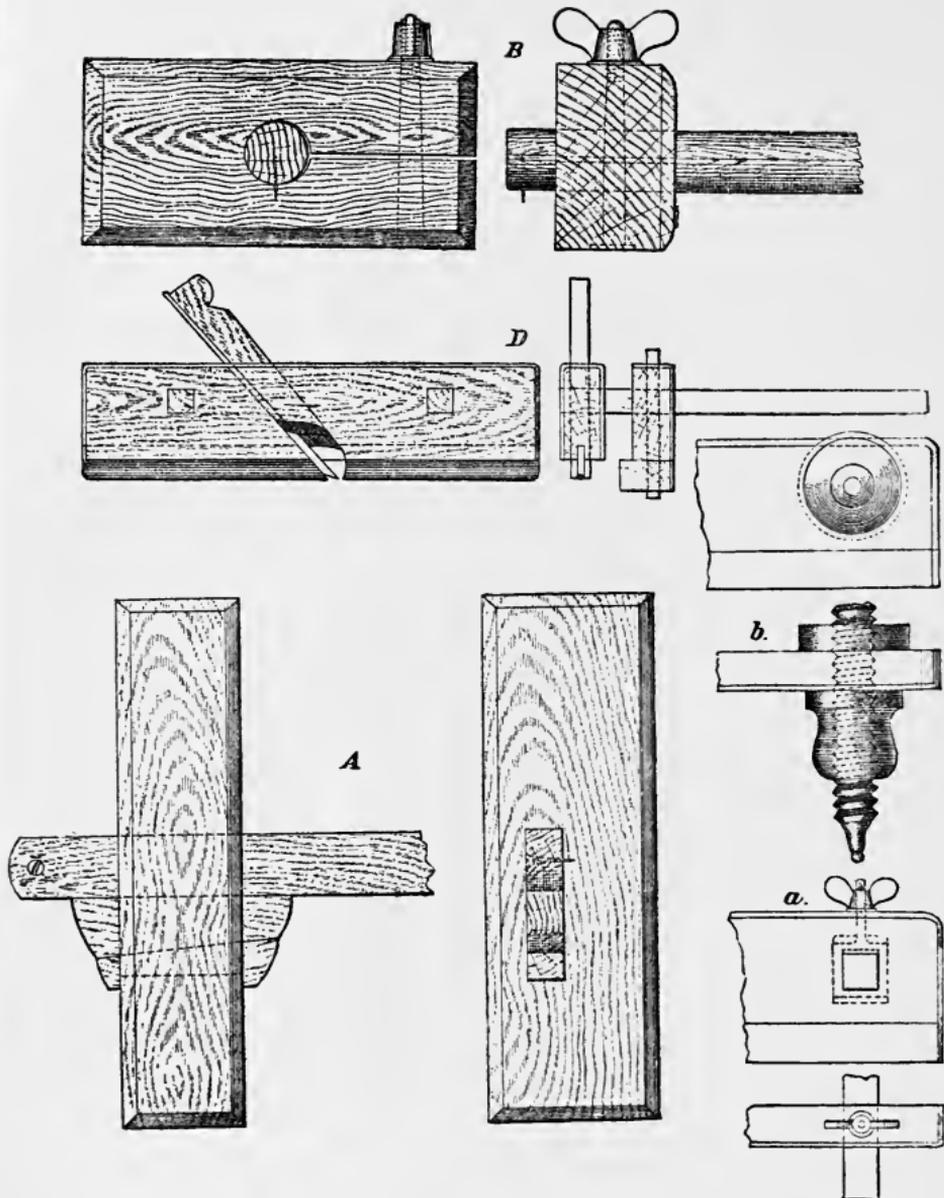
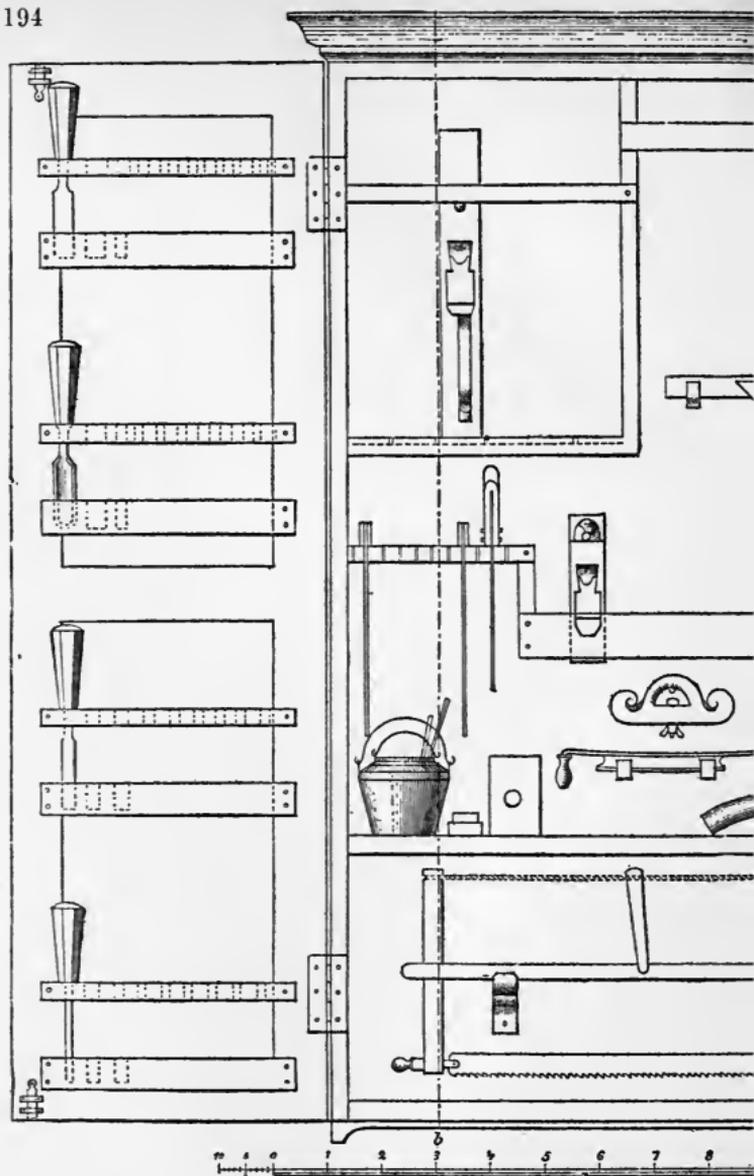
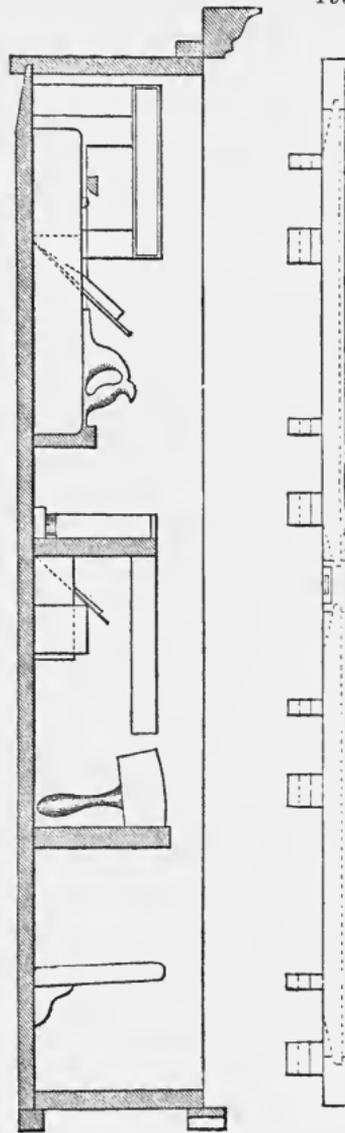
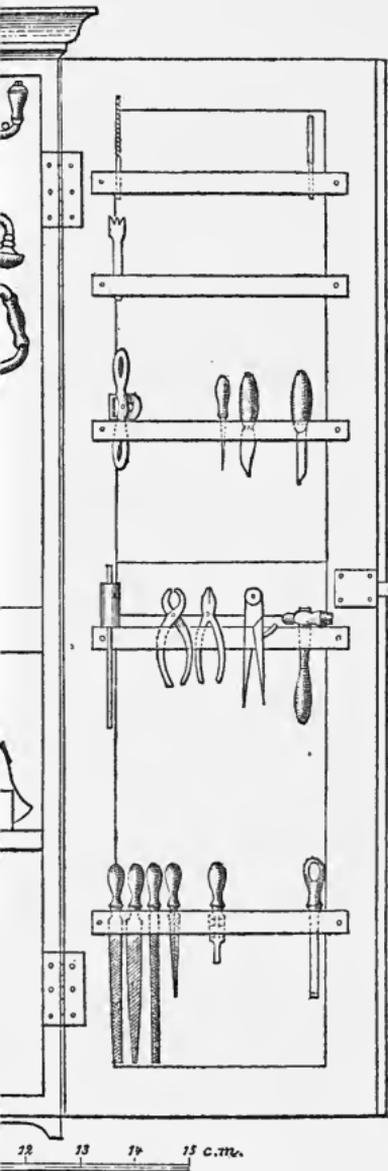


Plate X.

- A. Marking gauge (Johansson's) with stock adjusted by wedges. $\frac{1}{2}$.
 B. Marking gauge (Lundmark's modified) with stock adjusted by thumb-screw. $\frac{1}{2}$.
 D. Plough-gauge, *a* and *b*, different methods of adjustment. $\frac{1}{2}$.





Section
through *a-b*.

Plan of
side elevation
of door.

The Table given below represents a systematically arranged Series of Models (the High School Series). The numbers in the widest column indicate the Exercises required in each Model, in the order in which they occur.

Name of Model.	Wood employed.	Exercises involved.	New Exercises.	Total number of Exercises performed.
1 ^a Small pointer	Birch	1. 2.	1. 2.	2
1 ^b Do.	Do.	1. 2. 3.	3.	3
2 Pencil pin	Do.	1. 2. 4.	4.	4
3 Round flower stick	Pine	5. 1. 2. 6.	5. 6.	6
4 Letter opener	Birch	5. 1. 2. 6.	6.	6
5 Rectangular flower stick	Pine	5. 7. 8. 9. 3. 6.	7. 8. 9.	9
6 Pencil holder	Do.	5. 1. 11. 6. 2. 13.	11. 13.	11
7 Key label	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 11. 6. 2. 13. 3.	10. 12.	13
8 Packthread winder	Birch	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 14. 10. 15. 1. 6. 16. 13.	14. 15. 16.	16
9 Round ruler	Pine	5. 7. 8. 9. 10. 17. 18. 6. 2. 13.	17. 18.	18
10 Pen-rest	Birch	5. 28. 8. 9. 10. 19. 1. 2. 18. 13.	19. 28.	20
11 Paper knife	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 20. 16. 6. 21. 13. 22.	20. 21. 22.	23
12 Razor strop	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 23. 24. 14. 13. 22.	23. 24.	25
13 Small bowl	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 15. 24. 13. 26. 25. 6. 22.	25. 26.	27
14 Hammer handle	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 20. 29. 4. 30. 2. 13. 22.	29. 30.	29
15 Pen tray	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 26. 22. 24. 13. 18. 33.	33.	30
16 Knife board	Pine or fir	5. 12. 8. 9. 10. 14. 15. 24. 34. 13. 33. 22.	34.	31
17 Flower-pot cross	Pine	5. 7. 8. 9. 10. 2. 1. 6. 13. 35.	35.	32

Name of Model.	Wood employed.	Exercises involved.	New Exercises.	Total number of Exercises performed.
18 Metre measure	Birch	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 23. 29. 15. 16. 1. 6. 2. 4. 13. 22.	0.	32
19 Scoop	Do.	5. 28. 12. 9. 14. 7. 15. 24. 31. 32. 25. 26. 13. 18. 6. 16. 2. 22.	31. 32.	34
20 Clothes rack	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 14. 15. 24. 13. 38. 4. 2. 6. 37. 25. 33. 39. 41. 22.	37. 38. 39. 41.	38
21 Flower pot stand	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 34. 19. 24. 1. 2. 13. 42. 43. 33.	42. 43.	40
22 Flower-press roller and rests	Birch	5. 7. 12. 9. 10. 14. 17. 18. 24. 13. 22. 8. 15. 45. 32. 11.	45.	41
23 Footstool	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 34. 15. 45. 31. 25. 14. 13. 33. 42. 43.	0.	41
24 Book-carrier	Pine and birch	5. 12. 8. 9. 47. 39. 10. 34. 19. 24. 1. 15. 27. 2 18. 13. 4. 22. 11. 51.	27. 47. 51.	44
25 Box	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 42. 43. 33. 22.	59.	45
26 Ladle	Birch	5. 28. 12. 9. 10. 31. 15. 32. 25. 14. 24. 26. 20. 52. 30. 1. 6. 16. 13. 22.	52.	46
27 Flower-press	Pine	5. 28. 12. 46. 39. 9. 47. 15. 10. 29. 53. 54. 33. 22. 51.	46. 53. 54.	49
28 Cloak-suspender	Birch	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 15. 55. 33. 2. 6. 14. 11. 30. 13. 22. 37. 41.	55.	50
29 Flat ruler	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 14. 11. 56. 38. 2. 13. 22.	56.	51
30 Boot-jack	Birch and Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 31. 15. 10. 29. 27. 57. 39. 34. 32. 30. 16. 6. 2. 13. 22.	57.	52

Name of Model.	Wood employed.	Exercises involved	New Exercises.	Total number of Exercises performed.
31 Lamp wall stand	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 58. 15. 16. 1. 6. 2. 13. 14. 40. 39. 42. 43. 33. 22.	40. 58.	54
32 Shuttle	Birch	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 15. 29. 24. 60. 10. 6. 1. 40. 61. 13. 22.	60. 61.	56
33 Knife-box	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 58. 62. 39. 14. 20. 6. 16. 2. 1. 13. 46. 33. 18. 42. 43. 22.	62	57
34 American axe-handle	Oak	5. 20. 12. 10. 29. 44. 30. 18. 13. 22. 36.	36. 44.	59
35 Match box stand	Birch	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 56. 14. 16. 1. 2. 6. 13. 59. 58. 66. 42. 40. 22.	66.	60
36 Round stiek	Do.	5. 7. 12. 9. 10. 63. 17. 18. 6. 13. 22.	63.	61
37 Set-square	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 56. 38. 59. 14. 31. 32. 64. 22.	64.	62
38 Pen-box	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 58. 65. 66. 56. 2. 33. 22.	65.	63
39 Stool	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 46. 9. 39. 10. 34. 32. 14. 15. 6. 13. 68. 67. 20. 16. 1. 24. 42. 3. 4. 43. 33. 22.	67. 68.	65
40 Square	Beech	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 69. 66. 14. 33. 22. 36.	69.	66
41 Drawing-board	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 46. 39. 10. 59. 70. 47. 34. 32. 33. 71. 25. 40. 42. 24. 1. 51. 22.	70. 71.	68
42 Marking-gauge	Beech	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 72. 24. 33. 2. 1. 6. 18. 13. 22. 40.	72.	69
43 Bracket	Birch or Alder	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 46. 39. 10. 34. 15. 24. 45. 13. 22. 81. 33. 16. 1. 4. 72. 64. 14. 42. 75. 22. 41.	75. 81.	71
44 Picture-frame	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 73. 39. 33. 74. 46. 56. 25. 75. 14. 19. 24. 2. 3. 13. 22.	73. 74.	73

Name of Model.	Wood employe.	Exercises involved	New Exercises.	Total number of Exercises performed.
45 Stand for tools	Pine	5. 7. 12. 8. 46. 9. 39. 10. 59. 58. 14 15. 23. 16. 6. 2. 1. 13. 76. 42. 32. 24. 18. 43. 33. 22.	76.	74
46 Tea-tray	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 46. 39. 31. 32. 79. 14. 24. 15. 1. 6. 16. 13. 33. 18. 40. 42. 43. 22.	79.	75
47 Book-shelves	Do.	5. 7. 12. 8. 9. 10. 59. 15. 24. 29. 16. 6. 2. 13. 22. 81. 33. 18. 39.	0.	75
48 Hooped bucket	Do.	5. 31. 32. 82. 10. 28. 18. 12. 50. 3. 29. 83. 40. 84. 15. 16. 4. 34. 13. 22.	50. 82. 83. 84.	79
49 Cabinet	Do.	5. 88. 12. 46. 39. 8. 9. 10. 34. 76. 65. 42. 38. 71. 43. 33. 72. 77. 78. 22.	77. 78. 88.	82
50 Small table	Do.	5. 88. 12. 9. 10. 8. 85. 32. 49. 13. 33. 39. 46. 66. 86. 24. 34. 87. 22.	49. 85. 86. 87.	86

PRACTICAL DIRECTIONS
FOR MAKING
THE HIGH SCHOOL SERIES
OF
SLÖJD MODELS.

BY
ALFRED JOHANSSON,
Teacher at the Slöjd Training College at Nääs, Sweden.

TRANSLATORS' PREFACE.

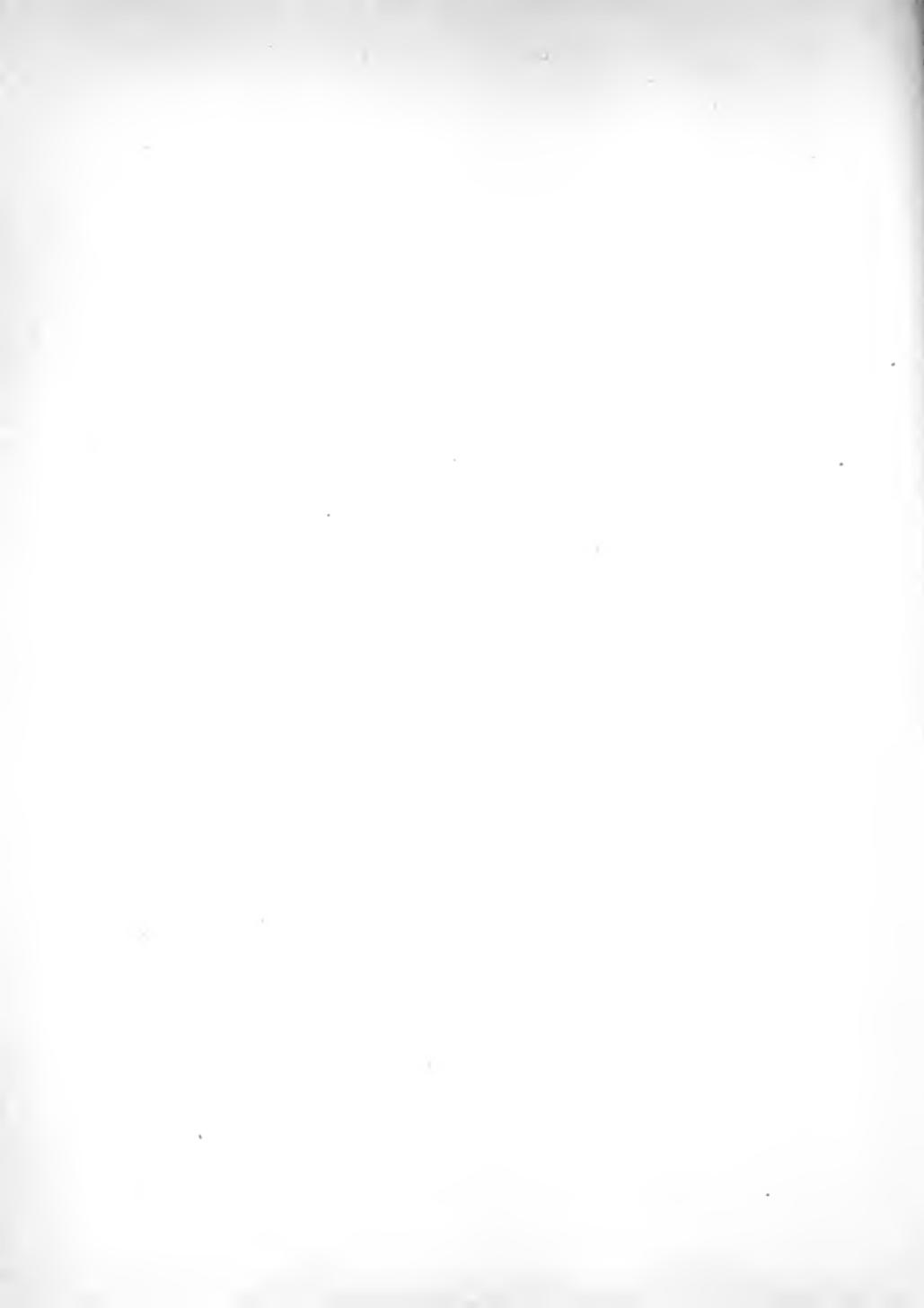
This little book is intended to be a supplement and companion to the Teachers' Handbook of Slöjd.

The directions which it contains constitute only a part of the Swedish book from which they are taken. There was originally at Nääs only one series of models, which every student was obliged to make. There are now three series of models, adapted for Elementary Schools, Secondary Schools, and High Schools respectively. Each series gives practice in the *same exercises*, and each series includes a number of models common to all; but each also includes particular models which are more especially suitable for the particular class of school: *e.g.*, all series include a paper-knife, a footstool, and a box; a spoon, an axe-handle, and a plate-rack, are included in the Elementary and Secondary School series; whilst a drawing-board, a tea tray, and a bracket, are peculiar to the High School series.

The directions given for the High School series have been chosen for translation as more suitable for English people than those of the other two series, which include articles that are quite unknown, and that would be quite useless in English schools and houses. It is true that even the High School series does not in all points conform to the principles laid down in Herr Salomon's Introduction (see pp. 205-207) from the point of view of *English conditions*, but this is due to the fact that English Slöjd teachers are not yet agreed as to the best English substitutes for certain Swedish models. The Appendix to this book contains some suggestions toward this end, and it is open to every Slöjd teacher to adopt his own substitutes, provided that the articles he selects give practice in the right exercises in the right order.

The directions given are not intended to supersede the instructions of a teacher for those who are ignorant of Slöjd. They are merely condensed notes for the guidance of a pupil working with a teacher, or for the refreshment of his memory after a course of instruction.

It is assumed throughout that the student has before him a pattern model, a drawing, and the geometrical construction when necessary. A list of the exercises occurring in each model will be found on pp. 196-199, and by referring to the instructions for the execution of the exercises given in the Teachers' Handbook of Slöjd, pp. 126-183, the student who is working by himself will always secure sufficient guidance.



INTRODUCTION.

BY OTTO SALOMON.

THESE is perhaps no more dangerous attitude of mind than that of the people whose opinions remain stationary. Everything, so far at all events as regards the outward form, is subject to the laws of change and development. That which was admirably adapted for the past, may be unsuitable for the present, and entirely useless in the future. We may admit this general truth without committing ourselves to the propositions that everything old is bad, and that everything new is good. There are truths which hold good for all time, and which, at the outside, merely assume a different form of expression at different periods ; while many new doctrines, at first sight satisfactory, prove insufficient when tested by experience.

It is especially important in educational matters, that we should understand how to steer the middle course between that conservative spirit which is identical with surrender to the enemy of all progress—"use and wont," and the nervous, restless search after novelty which is ever replacing one imperfectly tested method by another equally untried. The zealous teacher must always bear in mind that, while his work both in form and spirit should bear the impress of development, this development must be gradual and well-considered. The older he is and the greater the stores of experience at his command, the more clearly will he apprehend that the whole question of education is much more complicated than he at first imagined it to be. Much that on superficial observation seemed simple and clear, on closer inspection turns out to be the result of many and complex factors. The experienced teacher therefore guards against hasty conclusions regarding the merits of particular educational methods. Not content with seeing them in operation, he studies them, and before abandoning one and adopting another, he seeks assurance that the new method is not only newer, but better than the old. He knows too well that what promises well in theory, does not always stand the test of practice.

Educational Slöjd, the latest addition to the school curriculum, is yet in the earliest stage of development, and though there exists an increasing agreement as regards its fundamental principles, much serious work

remains to be done in the practical application of these principles. Hence we must utilize in every possible way the ever widening experience of the labourers in this comparatively virgin soil. This is especially the case as regards the models used in Slöjd teaching. The teacher who has paid close attention to the subject may now discover striking defects in a series of models, which only a few years ago seemed to meet all demands. In an institution, therefore, like the one at Nääs, the object of which is to render teachers capable of directing instruction in educational Slöjd, it would be inexcusable if no effort were made to keep pace with the times, by taking advantage of the observations made during each course, and of the advice and the suggestions which the students are able to offer. During the discussions which are held weekly for this purpose, each brings his contribution to the common stock, and if it is true that "two heads are better than one," it is to be assumed that fifty heads are better still for the purpose of detecting faults and perceiving the means of improvements. Hence no course of instruction given at Nääs has been in all respects arranged in the same way as its immediate predecessor, though it does not follow that every change has been for the best. On the contrary, it has not seldom been found advisable to revert to old methods.

The essential characteristic of method at Nääs, is the fact that the principle of arrangement lies in the *exercises* occurring in Slöjd carpentry. This indeed is the only rational principle on which any method of educational Slöjd can be based. Neither the tools used nor the models produced furnish a suitable starting point. Exercises which may be executed with one and the same tool, are not *all* easier or *all* more difficult than the same exercises executed with another tool; while the models, regarded from the educational point of view, are merely the incidental means by which various combinations of exercises are expressed.

The exercises themselves may be defined as the *elaboration of material by means of one or more tools in a definite manner, and with a definite aim*. Therefore the principle that the models in any series shall be arranged to proceed gradually from the more easy to the more difficult, and from the simple to the complex, refers to the order of the exercises of which that series of models constitutes, for educational purposes, the practical expression.

The following principles must also be kept in view in the arrangement of any series of models :—

All articles of luxury must be excluded.

The articles must be such as can be used by the children, or in their homes, and such as they can make without any help whatever.

The articles must further be of such a nature that the children's sense of form and beauty will be cultivated in making them.

The earlier articles made should be objects which can be finished quickly and without much physical exertion. Models requiring longer time and greater strength should only be introduced gradually.

Wood should be the only material employed, and no more than is absolutely necessary should be used.

Both hard and soft wood should be employed.

Turning and wood-carving should not be included.

The articles made should not be varnished.

Sufficient variety in the exercises and in the character of the models should be provided.

All the exercises incidental to wood-slöjd should be adequately represented.

The knife, as the fundamental tool, is the first which should be placed in the hands of the children.

It is hoped that this little book may worthily do its part towards the establishment in our schools of educational Slöjd, *i.e.*, to a system of Slöjd teaching, rightly understood and practically carried out.

Printed on Cards (size 15 by 10 inches), in stout wrapper, with elastic band. Price 4s. per set.

WORKING DIAGRAMS
OF THE
HIGH SCHOOL SERIES OF
SLÖJD MODELS

New Edition, Drawn to Metric Measurements, and intended to accompany JOHANSSON'S "Practical Directions."

BY WILLIAM NELSON,

Organiser of Manual Training to the Manchester School Board.

The Set consists of detailed Diagrams of all the fifty Models forming the High School Series, together with five additional Diagrams of Alternative Models, specially adapted to English requirements.

N.B.—The Original Edition of these Cards (11 by 7 $\frac{3}{4}$ inches) with ENGLISH Measurements can still be had, price per set, 3s.

LIST OF EXERCISES OCCURRING IN EACH MODEL.

- 1A. Long cut, cross cut.
- 1B. Long cut, cross cut, oblique cut.
2. Long cut, cross cut, bevel cut.
3. Sawing off, long cut, cross cut, convex cut.
4. Sawing off, long cut, cross cut, convex cut.
5. Sawing off, long sawing, edge planing, squaring, oblique cut, convex cut.
6. Sawing off, long cut, boring with pin-bit, convex cut, cross cut, filing.
7. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring-up, gauging, boring with pin-bit, convex cut, cross cut, filing, oblique cut.
8. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, boring with centre-bit, gauging, wave sawing, long cut, convex cut, concave cut, filing.
9. Sawing off, long sawing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, bevelling, convex modelling with the plane, convex cut, cross cut, filing.
10. Sawing off, chopping, edge planing, squaring, gauging, sawing with tenon saw, long cut, cross cut, convex modelling with the plane, filing.
11. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, wave sawing, concave cut, convex cut, surface cut, filing, scraping.
12. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, obstacle planing, perpendicular chiselling, boring with centre-bit, filing, scraping.
13. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, wave sawing, perpendicular chiselling, filing, gouging with gouge and spoon-iron, oblique chiselling, convex cut, scraping.
14. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, wave sawing, smoothing with spokeshave, bevel cut, modelling with spokeshave, cross cut, filing, scraping.

15. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, gouging with gouge and spoon-iron, scraping, perpendicular chiselling, filing, convex modelling with the plane, smoothing-up.
16. Sawing off, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, boring with centre-bit, wave sawing, perpendicular chiselling, end squaring, filing, smoothing-up, scraping.
17. Sawing off, long sawing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, cross cut, long cut, convex cut, filing, halving with knife.
18. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, obstacle planing, smoothing with spokeshave, wave sawing, concave cut, long cut, convex cut, cross cut, bevel cut, filing, scraping.
19. Sawing off, chopping, face planing, squaring, boring with centre-bit, long sawing, wave sawing, perpendicular chiselling, oblique sawing, oblique planing, oblique chiselling, gouging with gouge and spoon-iron, filing, convex modelling with the plane, convex cut, concave cut, cross cut, scraping.
20. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, boring with centre-bit, wave sawing, perpendicular chiselling, filing, bevelled edge planing, bevel cut, cross cut, convex cut, fitting-in pegs, oblique chiselling, smoothing-up, glueing, sinking iron plates, scraping.
21. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, end squaring, sawing with tenon-saw, perpendicular chiselling, long cut, cross cut, filing, nailing, punching, smoothing-up.
22. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, squaring, gauging, boring with centre-bit, bevelling, convex modelling with the plane, perpendicular chiselling, filing, scraping, edge planing, wave sawing, perpendicular gouging, oblique planing, boring with shell-bit.
23. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, end squaring, wave sawing, perpendicular gouging, oblique sawing, oblique chiselling, boring with centre-bit, filing, smoothing-up, nailing, punching.
24. Sawing off, face planing, edge planing, squaring, dove-tail clamping, glueing, gauging, end squaring, sawing with tenon-saw, perpendicular chiselling, long cut, wave sawing, concave chiselling, cross cut, convex modelling with the plane, filing, bevel cut, scraping, boring with the shell-bit, fixing with screws.
25. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, nailing, punching, smoothing-up, scraping.

26. Sawing off, chopping, face planing, squaring, gauging, oblique sawing, wave sawing, oblique planing, oblique chiselling, boring with centre-bit, perpendicular chiselling, gouging with gouge and spoon-iron, wave sawing, modelling with draw-knife, modelling with spokeshave, long cut, convex cut, concave cut, filing, scraping.
27. Sawing off, chopping, face planing, plain jointing, glueing, squaring, dove-tail clamping, wave sawing, gauging, smoothing with spoke shave, planing across the grain, wedge planing with smoothing plane, smoothing-up, scraping, fixing with screws.
28. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, wave sawing, planing with round plane, smoothing-up, cross cut, convex cut, boring with centre-bit, boring with shell-bit, modelling with spokeshave, filing, scraping, fixing metal-hook, plugging.
29. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, boring with centre-bit, boring with shell-bit, fixing with wooden pegs (for planing thin wood), bevelled edge planing, cross cut, filing, scraping.
30. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, oblique sawing, wave sawing, gauging, smoothing with spokeshave, concave chiselling, single dove-tailing at right angles, glueing, end squaring, oblique planing, modelling with spokeshave, concave cut, convex cut, cross cut, filing, scraping.
31. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, common dove-tailing, wave sawing, concave cut, long sawing, convex cut, cross cut, filing, boring with centre-bit, boring with bradawl, glueing, nailing, punching, smoothing-up, scraping.
32. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, wave sawing, smoothing with spokeshave, perpendicular chiselling, hollowing out with gouge, gauging, convex cut, long cut, boring with bradawl, axle fitting, filing, scraping.
33. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, common dove-tailing, square grooving, glueing, boring with centre-bit, wave sawing, convex cut, concave cut, cross cut, long cut, filing, plain jointing, smoothing-up, convex modelling with the plane, nailing, punching, scraping.
34. Sawing off, wave sawing, face planing, gauging, smoothing with the spokeshave, bevelling with the draw-knife, modelling with the spokeshave, convex modelling with the plane, filing, scraping, work in hard wood.

35. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, fixing with wooden pegs (for planing thin wood), boring with centre-bit, concave cut, long cut, cross cut, convex cut, filing, square shooting, common dove-tailing, glueing with the use of the handscrew, nailing, boring with bradawl, scraping.
36. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, squaring, gauging, long oblique planing, bevelling, convex modelling with the plane, convex cut, filing, scraping.
37. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, fixing with wooden pegs (for planing thin wood), bevelled edge planing, square shooting, boring with centre-bit, oblique sawing, oblique planing, setting out, scraping.
38. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, common dove-tailing, panel grooving, glueing with the use of the handscrew, fixing with wooden pegs (for planing thin wood), cross cut, smoothing-up, scraping.
39. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, plain jointing, squaring, glueing, gauging, end squaring, oblique planing, boring with centre-bit, convex sawing, convex cut, filing, oblique edge grooving, sawing with compass saw, wave sawing, concave cut, long cut, perpendicular chiselling, nailing, oblique cut, bevel cut, punching, smoothing-up, scraping.
40. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, slotting, glueing with the use of the handscrew, boring with centre-bit, smoothing-up, scraping, work in hard wood.
41. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, plain jointing, glueing, gauging, square shooting, dove-tailing in thick wood, dove-tail clamping, end squaring, oblique planing, smoothing-up, mitreing, oblique chiselling, boring with the bradawl, nailing, perpendicular chiselling, long cut, fixing with screws, scraping.
42. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, common mortising, perpendicular chiselling, smoothing-up, cross cut, long cut, convex cut, convex modelling with the plane, filing, scraping, boring with the bradawl.
43. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, plain jointing, glueing, gauging, end squaring, convex sawing, perpendicular chiselling, perpendicular gouging, filing, scraping, notched dove-tailing, smoothing-up, concave cut, long cut, bevel cut, common mortise and tenon, setting out, boring with centre-bit, nailing, graving with V tool, scraping, fixing metal plates.

44. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, half-lapping, glueing, smoothing-up, rebating, plain jointing, fixing with wooden pegs (for planing thin wood), oblique chiselling, graving with V tool, boring with centre-bit, sawing with tenon-saw, perpendicular chiselling, cross cut, oblique cut, filing, scraping.
45. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, plain jointing, squaring, glueing, gauging, square shooting, common dove-tailing, boring with centre-bit, convex sawing, obstacle planing, concave cut, convex cut, cross cut, long cut, filing, half-lap dove-tailing, nailing, oblique planing, perpendicular chiselling, convex modelling with the plane, punching, smoothing-up, scraping.
46. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, plain jointing, glueing, oblique sawing, oblique planing, oblique dove-tailing, boring with centre-bit, perpendicular chiselling, convex sawing, long cut, convex cut, concave cut, filing, smoothing-up, convex modelling with the plane, boring with the bradawl, nailing, punching, scraping.
47. Sawing off, long sawing, face planing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, square shooting, convex sawing, perpendicular chiselling, smoothing with spokeshave, concave cut, convex cut, cross cut, filing, scraping, notched dove-tailing, smoothing-up, convex modelling with the plane, glueing.
48. Sawing off, oblique sawing, oblique planing, concave modelling with the plane, gauging, chopping, convex modelling with the plane, face planing, circle sawing, oblique cut, smoothing with the spokeshave, staving, boring with the bradawl, hooping, convex sawing, concave cut, bevel cut, end squaring, filing, scraping.
49. Sawing off, up and down sawing, face planing, plain jointing, glueing, edge planing, squaring, gauging, end squaring, half-lap dove-tailing, panel grooving, nailing, bevelled edge planing, mitreing, punching, smoothing-up, common mortise and tenon, hinge-sinking, lock fitting, scraping.
50. Sawing off, up and down sawing, face planing, squaring, gauging, edge planing, concealed tenoning, oblique planing, chamfering, filing, smoothing-up, glueing, plain jointing, glueing with the use of the hand-screw, blocking, perpendicular chiselling, end squaring, mortised blocking, scraping.

PRACTICAL DIRECTIONS.

The Metric Measurements given for each Model are those used at Nääs, and uniform with those given in Nelson's Working Diagrams of the Slojd Models (Metric Edition). The English Measurements are uniform with those given in Nelson's Working Diagrams (English Edition).

No. 1a.—SMALL POINTER (Birch).

Metric—Length 10 cm. Thickness 0·7 cm.

English—4 in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. In a suitable piece of wood, make two sides at right angles.
2. Set out the thickness with the metre-measure and pencil, and cut down to the lines.
3. Draw lines on each side with the metre-measure to indicate how the model tapers, and cut down to them, keeping the sides at right angles.
4. Cut off the edges to make the form octagonal, then make it round.
5. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and cut off.
6. Finish with sand-paper.*

N.B.—This model is made entirely with the knife.

No. 1b.—SMALL POINTER (Birch).

Metric—Length 10 cm. Thickness 0·7 cm.

English—4 in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

- 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5. See No. 1a.
6. Make the oblique cuts.

N.B.—This model is made entirely with the knife.

No. 2.—PARCEL PIN (Birch).

Metric—Length 7 cm. Thickness 1 cm.

English—2 $\frac{3}{4}$ in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. On a suitable piece of wood make four sides at right angles. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and cut off.

* As a general rule it is to be understood that models are finished with sand-paper where this is necessary.

2. Bevel the edges like those of the model.
3. Set out the place for the notch with the metre-measure, and make the cross cut.

N.B.—This model is made entirely with the knife.

No. 3.—FLOWER STICK (Hard Pine).

Metric—Length 30 cm. Thickness 1 cm.

English—12 in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. Saw off a suitable piece of wood with the hand-saw, and make four sides at right angles, each 1.1 cm. broad.
2. Cut off the edges to make the stick octagonal, then make it round.
3. Make the point.
4. Set out the length, and cut off, then make the rounded top.

N.B.—After the piece of wood is sawn off, this model is made entirely with the knife.

No. 4.—LETTER OPENER (Birch).

Metric—Length 17 cm. Breadth 1 cm.

English—6 $\frac{3}{4}$ in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. Cut a suitable piece of wood to the required breadth and thickness.
2. Draw the outline after the model and diagram, and cut out.
3. Make one side round.
4. Set out the length and cut off. Shape both ends like those of the model.

N.B.—This model is made entirely with the knife.

No. 5.—FLOWER-POT STICK (Pine).

Metric—Length 35 cm. Thickness 1 cm.

English—14 in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece of wood.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane, set out the thickness with the metre-measure and pencil, and plane off.
3. Square the end with the knife, and draw the diagonals for the point of the pyramid.
4. Draw the sides of the base of the pyramid at right angles, and cut with the knife.
5. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and cut off.

6. Make the tapering point and the notches with the knife.
7. Bevel the edges with the smoothing-plane.

No. 6.—CRAYON HOLDER (Hard Pine).

Metric—Length 20 cm. Thickness 1·2 cm.

English—8 in. by $\frac{1}{2}$ in.

1. Saw off a suitable piece of wood with the hand-saw, and make it square with the knife.
2. Draw the diagonals at one end, and bore a hole with the shell-bit where they intersect.
3. Taper the sides and cut away the edges to make it octagonal, then make it round.
4. Set out the length, and cut off with the knife. Smooth with the file.

No. 7.—KEY LABEL—(Pine).

Metric—Length, 11 cm. Breadth, 4 cm.

English—4 in. by $1\frac{1}{2}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Then set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
3. Draw the outline, using square and compass.
4. Bore the hole with the shell-bit.
5. Set out the thickness, after the model, with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
6. Cut off the length with the dove-tail saw, and make the rounded end with the knife.
7. Smooth both ends with the file.
8. Make the notches with the knife.

No. 8.—PACKTHREAD WINDER (Birch).

Metric—Length 9 cm. Breadth 4·5 cm.

English— $3\frac{1}{2}$ in. by $1\frac{3}{4}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane.
3. Draw the outline from the diagram, with the help of the square and the compasses.
4. Bore with the centre-bit for the curve at each end.

5. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane to the line with the trying-plane.
 6. Saw out the shape with the turn-saw, and smooth with knife and file.
 7. Round the inner edges of the concave ends with the knife.
-

No. 9.—ROUND RULER (Pine).

Metric—Length 35 cm. Thickness 2.5 cm.

English—14 in. by 1 in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge and square the two remaining sides.
 3. Find the middle points in both ends and describe a circle round each, the diameter of which is equal to the thickness given.
 4. Bevel the edges with the jack-plane and the trying-plane, to make the piece of wood octagonal.
 5. Make the cylindrical form with the smoothing-plane.
 6. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off with the dove-tail saw.
 7. Round the edges of both ends with the knife.
 8. Smooth with the file.
-

No. 10.—PEN REST (Birch).

Metric — Length 9 cm. Breadth 2 cm.

English—3½ in. by ¾ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw, and trim it with the axe as nearly as possible to the given thickness.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane the other two sides.
3. Set out the length and the notches, from the diagram, with the compasses. Make the notches with the dove-tail saw and knife.
4. Saw off to the length with the dove-tail saw.
5. Find the middle point at both ends and describe round it a semi-circle, the diameter of which is equal to the given thickness. Round with the smoothing-plane.
7. Square the ends with the knife.
8. Smooth with the file.

No. 11.—PAPER KNIFE (Birch).*Metric—Length 30 cm. Breadth 3 cm.**English—12 in. by 1¼ in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw, and face and edge with the trying-plane.
 2. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, saw off with the hand-saw, and plane to the line with the trying-plane.
 3. Draw the outline from the diagram, cut out with the turn-saw, and smooth the edges with the knife and spokeshave.
 4. To make the sharp edge, draw a line down the middle of the front edge, and cut down to this line on both sides with the knife. Make the notch between the blade and handle with the knife.
 5. Round the handle and the back of the blade with the knife.
 6. Smooth with the file and the scraper.
-

No. 12.—RAZOR STROP—(Birch).*Metric—Length 40 cm. Breadth 4 cm.**English—16 in. by 1½ in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
 3. Set out from the diagram, with the help of the square and the marking-gauge, the position of the part cut away. Cut out with the hand-saw, smoothing-plane and knife. (Obstacle planing)
 4. Set out the length of the handle from the diagram with the metre-measure, and cut off with the tenon-saw and the firmer chisel.
 5. Set out the whole length and cut off. Set out the rounded form of the one end with the square and compasses, and cut it out with the turn-saw, firmer chisel, and spokeshave.
 6. Bore the hole with the centre-bit from both sides.
 7. Smooth with the file and scraper.
-

No. 13.—BOWL FOR WRITING TABLE—(Birch).*Metric—Length 9 cm. Breadth 5.5 cm.**English—3½ in. by 2¼ in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.

3. Make both constructions, using the square and compasses.
 4. Saw out with the turn-saw, pare the edge with the firmer chisel, and smooth with the file.
 5. Hollow out (first with the mallet and gouge, then with the spoon-iron), smooth with sand-paper.
 6. Model the under surface with the firmer chisel, knife and file.
 7. Smooth with the scraper.
-

No. 14.—HAMMER HANDLE—(Birch).

Metric—Length 30 cm. Breadth 3·2 cm.

English—12 in. by 1¼ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the trying-plane.
 3. Draw out the shape on both sides. (Freehand from diagram).
 4. Saw out with the turn-saw and smooth the sides with the spokeshave.
 5. Cut away the sharp edges (chamfer) with the knife, and shape with the spokeshave.
 6. Set out the length with the metre-measure and cut off with tenon-saw and knife.
 7. Smooth with file and scraper.
-

No. 15.—PEN TRAY—(Birch).

Metric—Length 25 cm. Breadth 7 cm.

English—15 in. by 2¾ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
3. Make the drawing for the hollowed out part with the square, compasses, metre-measure, and marking-gauge, and hollow out with the mallet, gouge, and spoon-iron. Smooth with the scraper and sandpaper.
4. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
5. Set out the length, and cut it off at right angles with the tenon-saw.
6. Set out the curve of the edges with the compasses, and model with the firmer chisel and smoothing-plane; then smooth with the file.
7. Smooth the whole of the outside with smoothing-plane and scraper.

No. 16.—KNIFE-BOARD (Pine or Fir).*Metric—Length 60 cm. Breadth 15 cm.**English—24 in. by 6 in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and plane it off.
 4. Draw the outline of the rounded end with square and compasses.
 5. Bore the hole with the centre-bit.
 6. Shape with the bow-saw, firmer chisel, smoothing-plane, spokeshave, and file.
 7. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with jack-plane and trying-plane.
 8. Smooth the plane surfaces with the smoothing-plane and the scraper.
-

No. 17.—FLOWER-POT CROSS (Pine).*Metric—Length 13 cm. Breadth 2.5 cm.**English—5 in. by 1 in. by $\frac{3}{8}$ in.*

1. Saw out in one piece, with the hand-saw, sufficient wood for both parts of the cross.
 2. Face and edge with jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Set out the breadth and the thickness with the marking-gauge, then cut in two with the dove-tail saw.
 4. Draw the outline (exclusive of the halving notches), using square, marking-gauge, and compasses; cut out with the knife, and smooth with the file.
 5. Set out the halving notches for the joint with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the knife.
 6. Fit the pieces together.
-

No. 18.—METRE-MEASURE (Birch).*Metric—Length 64 cm. Breadth 2.5 cm.**English—18 in. by 23½ in. by 1 in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
3. With square and marking-gauge set out the rectangular portion, and cut it out with hand-saw, smoothing-plane, spokeshave, and knife.

4. Taper the blade on both sides with the trying-plane.
 5. Draw the handle ; saw out with the turn-saw, and model with the knife.
 6. Bevel the edges of the handle with the knife.
 7. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off with the dove-tail saw.
 8. Smooth with the file and scraper.
-

No. 19.—SCOOP (Birch).

Metric—Length 24 cm. Breadth 7 cm.

English—9 $\frac{3}{4}$ in. by 2 $\frac{3}{4}$ in.

1. Saw off a suitable piece with the hand-saw, and trim with the axe as near the thickness required as possible.
 2. Face and edge with jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Make the side construction with square and compasses.
 4. Cut out with the centre-bit, hand-saw, and turn-saw, and smooth with firmer chisel and smoothing-plane.
 5. Draw the outline of the upper curved surface on the edge prepared, and cut out with the hand-saw and turn-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane and firmer chisel.
 6. The shape of the hollowed out portion is set out with the compasses and marking-gauge, and cut out with the mallet and gouge, spoon-iron, file, and scraper.
 7. Draw the outline of the under curved surface, and saw out with the turn-saw.
 8. Model with axe, smoothing-plane, and knife.
 9. Smooth with file and scraper.
-

No. 20.—CLOTHES RACK (Pine).

Metric—Length 40 cm. Breadth 8 cm.

English—16 in. by 3 in.

1. Saw out with the hand-saw a suitable piece for the back.
2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and the trying-plane. Set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
3. Draw a middle line for the holes for the pegs.
4. Make the construction with the square and compasses, cut out with the turn-saw and firmer chisel, and smooth with the file.

5. Bore the holes with the centre-bit.
6. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
7. Set out the bevel with compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and bevel with the knife and trying-plane.
8. Face and edge enough wood for the pegs in one piece, with the trying-plane, and set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
9. Set out the length of the pegs 1 cm. longer than the length given, and saw off with dove-tail saw.
10. On the pin ends of the pegs draw diagonals, and with the same centre-bit as was used to bore the holes, describe a circle round the centre point of the pin.
11. Set out the length of the pins with the square, and cut out with the dove-tail saw, knife, and firmer chisel, and finish with the file.
12. Smooth the front side of the back with the smoothing-plane, and glue the pegs into the holes.
13. Saw off the ends of the pins at the back with the tenon-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane.
14. Smooth the whole with the scraper.

No. 21.—FLOWER POT STAND (Pine).

Metric—Length 40 cm. Breadth 11 cm.

English—16 in. by 4½ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece from a plank with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
4. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw. Square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
5. Set out the breadth (1.5 cm.) for the laths, by making points on the plane surface 1 cm. from both ends, and join these points by straight lines.
6. Cut out the laths with the broad-webbed bow-saw, and plane to a thickness with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
7. Saw out the feet with the hand-saw, and plane with the trying-plane to the required breadth and thickness, and cut off with the tenon-saw. Fasten them together into the bench, and square the ends with the smoothing-plane.

8. Draw the shape of the feet with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the tenon-saw, firmer chisel, knife, and file.
9. Nail on the laths at right angles, and sink the heads of the nails with the punch, then smooth the surface with the smoothing-plane.
10. Smooth the ends of the stand with the file.

No. 22.—ROLLER & RESTS FOR FLOWER-PRESS (Birch).

Metric—Length 38 cm. Thickness 6 cm.

English—15 in. by 2½ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw for the roller.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane, set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
3. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw.
4. Set out the holes with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, bore the holes from both sides with the centre-bit.
5. Find the middle point of both ends, and round it describe a circle, the diameter of which is equal to the thickness required. Make the article octagonal with the roughing-plane and trying-plane.
6. Make the cylindrical form with the trying-plane and the smoothing-plane.
7. Smooth the roller with file and scraper.
8. Saw out sufficient wood for the rests with the bread-webbed bow-saw, and face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
9. Make the construction with the square and compasses; cut out with the turn-saw, gouge, and firmer chisel, and smooth with the file.
10. Set out the bevel with the compasses and metre-measure, and make it with the trying-plane.
11. Set out the holes with the compasses, and bore them with the shell-bit.
12. Smooth the parts with the scraper.

No. 23.—FOOT-STOOL.—(Pine).

Metric—Length 27 cm. Breadth 22 cm.

English—10½ in. by 8 in.

1. Make the laths by the directions given in No. 21.
2. Saw out wood for the feet in one piece.

3. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
4. Saw through the middle at right angles with the tenon-saw, and nail the two pieces together with nails.
5. Set out the length at right angles, and saw off with the tenon-saw ; square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
6. Make the construction on both sides with square and compasses ; cut out with the tenon-saw and turn-saw, chisel, centre-bit and gouge, smooth with the file, and take the pieces apart.
7. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
8. Nail on the laths. (*See further, No. 21*).

No. 24.—BOOK CARRIER. (Pine and Birch).

Metric—Length 23 cm. Breadth 15 cm.

English—9 in. by 6 in.

1. Saw out pine for both boards in one piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the metre-measure and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Set out the grooves for the clamps with the square, compasses, metre-measure, marking-point, bevel and marking-gauge, and cut out with the knife, tenon-saw (or groove-saw), firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth.
4. Plane up the clamps and fit them in with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
5. Plane the surface level with the trying-plane ; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with jack-plane and trying-plane.
6. Set out the length of each board at right angles with the metre measure and marking-point, and saw off with the tenon-saw.
7. Fasten the pieces together with nails ; square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
8. Set out the notches on both sides with the compasses and square, and cut out with tenon-saw, firmer chisel, and knife.
9. Saw out a suitable piece of birch for the handle with the hand-saw ; plane up with trying-plane, setting out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
10. Make the construction for the handle with square and compasses ;

cut out with turn-saw, firmer chisel, smoothing-plane and knife, and smooth with file and scraper.

11. Bore the holes for the screws with the shell-bit.
12. Screw the parts together with the screwdriver.

No. 25.—BOX (Pine).

Metric—Length 23 cm. Breadth 13 cm.

English—9 in. by 5 in.

1. Saw out the parts with the hand-saw, and face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
2. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with jack-plane and roughing-plane.
3. Set out the length of the sides with the metre-measure ; cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw, and square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.
4. Nail the pieces together, using bradawl and hammer.
5. Smooth the bottom with the smoothing-plane.
6. Saw off the bottom with the tenon-saw 5 mm. longer than the length given, and nail it on ; sink the heads of the nails with the punch.
7. Smooth the sides on the outside and the upper edges with the smoothing-plane.
8. Finish the whole with the scraper.

No. 26.—LADLE (Birch).

Metric—Length 34 cm. Breadth 8.6 cm.

English—13½ in. by 3⅝ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw, and trim it with the axe as near as possible to the required thickness.
2. Face and edge with jack-plane and trying-plane. Set out the breadth 5 mm. more than is given with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
3. Draw the upper curved outline on both sides ; saw out with the hand-saw and turn-saw ; and smooth with the smoothing-plane and firmer chisel.
4. Make the construction.
5. Cut out the upper surface with the centre-bit, hand-saw, and turn-saw.

6. Smooth to the lines drawn with firmer chisel and file.
 7. Hollow out the bowl with the mallet and gouge and spoon-iron ; smooth with scraper and sand-paper.
 8. Cut out the under surface like that of the model with the turn-saw, drawknife, spokeshave, and knife.
 9. Smooth with the file and scraper.
-

No. 27.—FLOWER PRESS (Pine).

Metric—Length 45 cm. Breadth 25 cm.

English—18 in. by 10 in.

1. Saw out pieces with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Plane up and fit the edges which are to be jointed with the trying-plane, and glue together.
 4. Face and edge with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the metre-measure and plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
 5. Set out the grooves for the clamps with the square, compasses, metre-measure, marking-point, bevel, and marking-gauge ; and cut out with the knife, groove-saw (or tenon-saw), firmer-chisel, and old woman's tooth.
 6. Plane up, and fit the clamps with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 7. Level the whole with the trying-plane.
 8. Draw the outline, and saw out with the turn-saw.
 9. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 10. Smooth the end with the spokeshave and file.
 11. Set out the slope of the under board with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and make it with the trying-plane and smoothing-plane (wedge-planing across the grain).
 12. Finish with smoothing-plane and scraper.
-

No. 28.—CLOAK SUSPENDER (Birch).

Metric—Length 40 cm. Breadth 3·5 cm.

English—16 in. by 1½ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane ; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.

3. Draw the outline, and saw out with the turn-saw.
4. Smooth the concave edge with the round plane, and the convex edge with the smoothing-plane.
5. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw.
6. Draw the curves of the sides, and model with the smoothing-plane. Model the ends with the knife.
7. Set out the hole with the compasses ; bore it with centre-bit and shell-bit.
8. Round the edge with the spokeshave, and smooth with file and scraper.
9. Fashion the hook with the round-jawed pliers, cold chisel, and hammer. Use an iron vice (if one is available).
10. Set out the plug and make it with the chisel ; glue it in.
11. Smooth off the end of the plug with the knife to correspond with the concave edge, and finish with file and scraper.

No. 29.—FLAT RULER (Birch).

Metric—Length 45 cm. Breadth 4·5 cm.

English—18 in. by 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
3. Set out the hole with the square and compasses, and bore with the centre-bit ; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and saw out with the broad-webbed bow-saw.
4. Fix with wooden pegs to a thicker piece of wood, 1 cm. broader than the work, and plane off.
5. Bevel the edges with the trying-plane.
6. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw ; smooth the ends with the knife and file.
7. Finish the wider flat surfaces with the scraper.

No. 30.—BOOT-JACK (Birch and Pine).

Metric—Length 34 cm. Breadth 11 cm.

English—13 $\frac{1}{2}$ in. by 4 $\frac{1}{4}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece of birch with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane.

3. Set out the outer contour with the square and compasses, and saw out with the hand-saw and the turn-saw.
4. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane to the line with the trying-plane.
5. Smooth the edges with the spokeshave and firmer chisel.
6. Saw out a piece of pine for the foot with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the trying-plane ; and set out the thickness with the marking-gauge.
7. Set out the dove-tail groove for the foot with the compasses, marking-point, square, set bevel, and cutting-gauge ; and cut it out with the knife, groove-saw, and firmer chisel.
8. Fit the foot into the dove-tail groove, using the cutting-gauge and the knife.
9. Cut out the fork with the bow-saw, knife, and spokeshave.
10. Glue in the foot.
11. Cut off the ends at right angles with the tenon-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane.
12. Set out the slope of the foot and back with the compasses and metre-measure ; cut out with the dove-tail saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane.
13. Model the edges with the spokeshave, knife, and file.
14. Finish with the scraper.

No. 31.—WALL LAMP-STAND (Pine).

Metric—Length 25 cm. Breadth 12 cm.

English—10 in. by 4 $\frac{3}{4}$ in.

1. Saw out material for the bottom and the back in one piece with the hand-saw, and face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
2. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Saw off the bottom and the back at right angles with the tenon-saw ; square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.
4. Set out the length of the dove-tails with the cutting-gauge, in accordance with the thickness of the wood ; set out the shape of the pins with the compasses, set-bevel and square, and cut it out with the dove-tail saw and firmer chisel, by aid of the mallet.
5. Draw the sockets from the pins with the marking-point and square, and cut out with the dove-tail saw and firmer chisel.

6. Fit the pins carefully into the sockets, using the knife and firmer-chisel.
 7. Make the construction for the back with the square and compasses ; cut out with the turn-saw and smooth with the knife and file.
 8. Bore the hole with the centre-bit and bradawl.
 9. Set out the length of the bottom, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw, then square the end in the shooting-board.
 10. Smooth up the two inside surfaces with the smoothing-plane, and glue the bottom and the back together.
 11. Saw out the sides of the bottom in one piece with the broad-webbed bow-saw, and plane off with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
 12. Draw the shape, and cut with the knife and smooth with the file ; then fit the parts and nail them together, using the knife, hammer, shooting-board, and trying-plane.
 13. Smooth the outer sides with the smoothing-plane.
 14. Finish the entire model with the scraper.
-

No. 32.—SHUTTLE (Birch).

Metric—Length 26 cm. Breadth 4 cm.

English—10 $\frac{3}{8}$ in. by 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ in.

1. Saw out a piece rather larger than the model with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane.
3. Draw the outline and saw out with the turn-saw.
4. Smooth the edges to the line with the spokeshave and firmer chisel.
5. Set out the position of the bowl with the compasses ; hollow out with the gouge and mallet, and smooth with sand-paper.
6. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
7. Draw the curves of the sides on the edge of the work ; saw out with the turn-saw, and smooth with the knife and the spokeshave.
8. Make the axle with the knife, and fit it into the hole, using the bradawl and the firmer chisel.
9. Finish with the file and the scraper.

No. 33.—KNIFE-BOX (Pine).

Metric—Length 30 cm. Breadth 17·5 cm.

English—11¾ in. by 7 in.

1. Saw out material for the sides in two pieces with the hand-saw, face and edge with the roughing-plane and the trying-plane, set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
2. Cut the pieces to the proper lengths with the tenon-saw, and square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.
3. Set out the grooves for the handle with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the knife and firmer chisel.
4. Set out the length of the dove-tails with the cutting-gauge, according to the thickness of the wood ; draw the shape of the pins with the compasses, set-bevel, and square, and cut out with the dove-tail saw, firmer chisel, and mallet.
5. Draw the sockets from the pins, using the marking-point and square, and cut them out with the dove-tail saw, firmer chisel, and mallet.
6. Fit the pins carefully into the sockets, using the knife and the firmer chisel.
7. Smooth the inner surfaces with the smoothing-plane, then glue the sides together.
8. Plain joint and glue the bottom.
9. Plane up the handle with the jack-plane and the trying-plane, setting out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
10. Make the construction for the handle with the square and compasses, and cut it out with the centre-bit, turn-saw, knife, and file ; square the ends in the shooting-board.
11. Smooth the outsides and the top and bottom with the smoothing-plane.
12. Fit the handle into the grooves, using the smoothing-plane and the knife.
13. Plane up the bottom with the jack-plane and the trying-plane ; set out the length and width with the metre-measure and square, and cut off with the tenon-saw ; then set out the required form of the edges with the square and compasses, and round with the smoothing-plane and the file.
14. Nail on the bottom ; sink the heads of the nails with the punch.
15. Finish with the file and scraper.

No. 34.—AMERICAN AXE HANDLE (Oak).*Metric—Length 48 cm. Breadth 6.5 cm.**English—19 in. by 2½ in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece of wood with the hand-saw.
 2. Draw the outline, and saw out with the turn-saw.
 3. Plane off one side with the trying-plane ; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge ; make a fresh drawing ; cut off the edges to the line with the draw-knife, and smooth with the spokeshave.
 4. Draw the shape of both ends, and model with draw-knife, spokeshave, and smoothing-plane.
 5. Set out the length, and cut off with the tenon-saw.
 6. Smooth with file and scraper.
-

No. 35.—MATCH BOX (Birch).*Metric—Length 19 cm. Breadth 8.5 cm.**English—7½ in. by 3⅜ in.*

1. Saw out the pieces with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
 2. Plane off the back according to the directions given in No. 29 (4).
 3. Make the construction with square and compasses ; cut out with the tenon-saw and knife, and smooth with the file.
 4. Bore the holes with the centre-bit and the bradawl.
 5. Dove-tail and glue according to the directions in No. 33.
 6. Smooth the under side with the file ; then glue the bottom on with aid of the hand-screw.
 7. Shape the bottom with the knife ; smooth with the file and the scraper, and nail on to the back.
-

No. 36.—ROUND STICK.*Metric—Length 80 cm. Thickness 3 cm. at one end, and 4 cm. at the other.**English—32 in. by 1⅝ in. by 1¼ in.*

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane.

3. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the trying-plane.
4. Find the middle point at both ends, and describe round each a circle, the diameter of which corresponds to the given thickness of each end.
5. Plane (oblique planing) with the trying-plane to the circles ; then make the stick octagonal with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
6. Round with trying-plane and smoothing-plane.
7. Set out the length, and cut off with the tenon-saw ; then model the ends with the knife.
8. Smooth with file and scraper.

No. 37.—SET SQUARE (Birch).

Metric—Breadth 10 cm. Length 20 cm.

English—8 in. by 4½ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the trying-plane. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and saw out with the hand-saw.
3. Fix with wooden-pegs, because the object is too thin to be planed between the bench-pegs.
4. Bevel the edges with the trying-plane.
5. Square the end in the shooting-board.
6. Set out the hole with the square and compasses, and bore with the centre-bit.
7. Set out the angles and size with the metre-measure, square, and marking-point ; saw out with the tenon-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane.
8. Set out the divisions with the compasses, square, and marking-point.
9. Smooth with the scraper.

No. 38.—PEN-BOX (Birch).*Metric—Length 24 cm. Breadth 7 cm.**English—9½ in. by 2¾ in. by 2 in.*

1. For directions for planing and dove-tailing, see No. 33.
2. Cut out the groove for the lid with the cutting-gauge, knife, and firmer chisel.
3. Fit the lid into the groove with the smoothing-plane.
4. Smooth the bottom with the smoothing-plane, and glue it on, using the hand-screw.
5. Smooth the outside with the smoothing-plane and the scraper.

No. 39.—STOOL (Pine).*Metric—Length 24 cm. Breadth 21 cm.**English—16½ in. by 10 in. by 8¼ in.*

1. Saw out the pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Plane up one side with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Plane the edges with the jack-plane and trying-plane; and plain joint.
4. Plane the parts true with the jack-plane and the trying-plane; then set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge.
5. Fasten the parts for the feet together with two nails. Cut off the length at right angles with the bow-saw. Square the upper end with the smoothing-plane.
6. Set out the inclination of the feet with the set-bevel and cutting-gauge, and plane off with the smoothing-plane.
7. Make the construction for the feet with the square and compasses; cut out with the centre-bit and bow-saw; and smooth with the knife and file.
8. Set out the length for the top, and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw. Square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
9. Set out the groove for the feet with the compasses, square, marking-point, set-bevel, and cutting-gauge; and cut out with the knife, groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth.
10. To fix the position of the hole, draw diagonals. Draw the outline of the hole, and cut out with the centre-bit, compass-saw, knife, and file.

11. Fit the feet into the groove with the knife, and glue them in.
12. Fasten the side pieces together with two nails ; make the construction, and cut out with tenon-saw, turn-saw, smoothing-plane, firmer chisel, knife, and file.
13. Smooth and fit the side pieces with the trying-plane, and nail them together ; sink the nails with the punch.
14. Smooth the top and sides with the trying-plane and smoothing-plane.
15. Finish with the file and scraper.

No. 40.—SQUARE (Beech)

Metric—Length 25 cm. Breadth 5 cm.

English—10 in. by 6 in. by 2 in.

1. Saw out both pieces with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
2. Square one end of the stock in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.
3. Set out the slot for the blade with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the tenon-saw and firmer chisel.
4. Fit in the blade with the firmer chisel ; then glue the parts together with aid of the hand-screw.
5. Smooth the sides and the outer edges with the smoothing-plane.
6. Set out the length, and cut off at right angles with the hand-saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board.
7. Set out the position of the hole with the compasses and square. Bore the hole with the centre-bit.
8. Finish with the scraper.

No. 41.—DRAWING-BOARD, WITH FRAME (Pine).

Metric—Length 54 cm. Breadth 44 cm.

English—21½ in. by 17½ in.

1. Saw out sufficient material for the board with the hand-saw.
2. Face one side with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Plain joint with the trying-plane, and fit the pieces together ; glue, and clamp up in the bench.

4. Saw out sufficient material for the frame with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; and set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
5. Set out the length of each part of the frame with the metre-measure, and cut off at right angles with the dove-tail saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board.
6. For directions for dove-tailing the sides of the frame, see No. 33.
7. Plane up one side and one edge of the board true with the trying-plane. Set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
8. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
9. Set out the length of the board with the metre-measure, and cut off at right angles with the hand-saw.
10. Set out the grooves for the clamps with the square, compasses, metre-measure, marking-point, set-bevel, and marking-gauge ; and cut it out with the knife, groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane.
11. Plane up the clamps, and fit them into the grooves with the jack-plane and trying-plane. Set out the angle of the ends with the set-bevel. Saw off with the dove-tail saw, and finish with the smoothing-plane.
12. Set out the slope of the clamps with the metre-measure and compasses, and make it with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
13. Square the ends of the drawing-board with the trying-plane, so that it fits into the frame.
14. Smooth up the outer edges of the frame with the trying-plane and the smoothing-plane.
15. Saw out the material in one piece for the blocks of the frame ; saw them off with the dove-tail saw ; fit them in with the firmer chisel, and secure them with nails, using the bradawl and the hammer.
16. Plane up the buttons in one length with the trying-plane, and make them with the firmer-chisel and knife.
17. Bore the holes with the bradawl, and drive in the screws with the screw-driver.
18. Finish with the smoothing-plane and the scraper.

No. 42.—MARKING-GAUGE (Beech).*Metric—Length 13 cm. Breadth 4.5 cm.**English—9 in. by 5 in.*

1. Saw out the pieces from a plank with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the trying-plane, and set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
2. Set out the position of the mortise in the stock with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge.
3. Cut out the mortise with a broad firmer chisel and a narrow mortise-chisel, using the mallet.
4. Set out the length of the stock and saw off with the tenon-saw ; smooth and shape the ends with the firmer chisel.
5. Plane up the spindle with the trying-plane ; fit it into the mortise with the smoothing-plane, and then cut off the length with the dove-tail saw ; shape it with the knife.
6. Make the wedges according to the model with the tenon-saw, smoothing-plane, firmer chisel, and knife.
7. Finish each part with the file and scraper, and put the whole together.

No. 43.—BRACKET (Birch or Alder).*Metric—Length 40 cm. Breadth 20 cm.**English—16 in. by 7½ in.*

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Plane up one side of the pieces for the shelf with the trying-plane ; plain joint and glue.
3. Face and edge the other portions with the trying-plane, and set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
4. Fasten together the pieces for the feet with two nails.
5. Make the construction for the feet with the square, compasses, and metre-measure.
6. Cut them off at the top at right angles with the hand-saw, and square with the smoothing-plane.
7. Cut out the feet with the turn-saw, firmer chisel, gouge, file, and scraper.
8. Face and edge the piece for the shelf with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge. Plane off with the trying-plane.

9. Set out the length of the shelf.
10. Set out the grooves with the compasses, square, marking-point, set-bevel, and marking-gauge ; cut it out with the knife, groove-saw, firmer chisel, and old woman's tooth-plane.
11. Set out the depth of the dove-tail on the feet with the cutting-gauge ; fit it into the groove with the knife and dove-tail saw.
12. Cut the shelf to the right length with the tenon-saw. Square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
13. Glue in the dove-tails, and smooth the shelf with the smoothing-plane.
14. Set out the length of the pillars with the compasses.
15. Set out the size of the dowelled ends of the pillars with a suitable centre-bit, and round them to fit the holes with the chisel. Chamfer the pillars with the knife.
16. Fit together the top rails with mortise and tenon, using firmer-chisel and dove-tail saw. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and saw off with the tenon-saw.
17. Set out the distance between the pillars with the compasses. Bore the holes for the pillars with the centre-bit which was used in setting out the dowels on the pillars.
18. Nail the back rail to the shelf. Fit the side rails and pillars together, and glue.
19. Fit the coverings of side rails with the chisel, and nail on.
20. Smooth the outer edges of the bracket with the smoothing-plane.
21. Set out the lined depressions in the edges with the marking-gauge, and grave with the parting-tool.
22. Finish with the scraper.

No. 44.—PICTURE FRAME (Birch or Alder).

Metric—Length 32 cm. Breadth 28 cm.

English—12½ in. by 11 in.

1. Saw out the pieces with the hand-saw ; face and edge with the trying-plane ; and set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
2. Set out the length of each side, and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.

3. Set out the half-lapping parts with the square, marking-point, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the dove-tail saw and firmer-chisel.
4. Set out the rebate with the cutting-gauge, and cut it out with the knife and chisel.
5. Smooth up both sides with the smoothing-plane.
6. Try the parts together, and glue.
7. Set out the fluting with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and grave with the parting-tool.
8. Make the hanger with the smoothing-plane, centre-bit, and chisel. Fit it in with the dovetail-saw and chisel, and glue.
9. Plane up the pyramidal facets for the front of the frame in one piece with the trying-plane, and cut off each to the right length with the dovetail-saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board; shape with the chisel, and glue on.
10. Plane up the back-piece with the trying-plane, and fit into the rebate with the shooting-board and trying-plane.
11. Finish with the scraper.

No. 45.—STAND FOR TOOLS (Pine).

Metric—Length 55 cm. Breadth 28 cm.

English—21½ in. by 11 in. by 5 in.

1. Saw out the material for the back and the bottom portions in one piece with the hand-saw. Plane up one side with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
2. Plain joint with the trying-plane, glue and “cramp up” in the bench vice.
3. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane. Set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge.
4. Cut off the parts which are to be dove-tailed at right angles with the tenon-saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board.
5. For directions for dove-tailing, see No. 33.
6. Make the construction for the back with the square, compasses, and metre-measure, and cut out with the turn-saw, centre-bit, smoothing-plane, knife, and file.
7. Set out the length of the bottom, and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw. Square the ends in the shooting-board.

8. Glue the parts together.
9. Plane up the other parts with the jack-plane and trying-plane. Set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
10. Dove-tail the box according to the model. (See No. 33.)
11. Set out the shape of the front of the box with the square, compasses, and marking-gauge; cut it out with the turn-saw, knife and file.
12. Fit the box on to the back and bottom, and nail, using the tenon-saw, firmer-chisel, smoothing-plane, file, and hammer.
13. Smooth up the bottom, the back, and the box with the smoothing-plane.
14. Make the construction for the bracket supports with the square and compasses; cut them out with the turn-saw, firmer-chisel, knife, and file; square one end in the shooting-board with the trying-plane; glue the supports on at right angles to the back, and nail.
15. Set out the length of the shelves, and saw off at right angles with the tenon-saw; square the ends in the shooting-board; set out the holes in the shelves with the compasses and square, and cut out with the centre-bit and the firmer-chisel.
16. Nail on the shelves.
17. Cut off the pieces for the divisions of the box at right angles with the tenon-saw; square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane; then fit them in and glue.
18. Finish with the scraper.

No. 46.—TEA TRAY (Pine).

Metric—Length 35 cm. Breadth 24 cm.

English—9 $\frac{3}{8}$ in. by 6 $\frac{3}{8}$ in.

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge the sides with the jack-plane and the trying-plane; set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
3. Plane up one side of the bottom with the jack-plane and trying-plane; plain joint and glue.
4. Set out the length of the sides with the metre-measure, and the required angles with the bevel; saw off with the tenon-saw; square the ends with the smoothing-plane.

5. Dove-tail the parts according to the model, using the cutting-gauge, compasses, bevel, square, marking-point, tenon-saw, firmer-chisel, and mallet.
6. Set out the shape of the end pieces, and cut out with the centre-bit, firmer-chisel, turn-saw, knife, and file.
7. Glue the parts together.
8. Plane up the bottom, on the side previously planed, with the trying-plane; set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge; plane off with the jack-plane and the trying-plane.
9. Smooth the outside with the smoothing-plane.
10. Set out the shape of the bottom with the compasses and metre-measure, and cut out with the smoothing-plane and file.
11. Nail on the bottom, using the brad-awl and the hammer.
12. Shape the upper edge of the tray with the smoothing-plane, knife, and file.
13. Finish with the scraper.

No. 47.—BOOKSHELVES (Pine).

Metric—Length 52 cm. Breadth 45 cm.

English—20½ in. by 18 in. by 6 in.

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw; face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane; set out the breadth with the metre-measure and the thickness with the marking-gauge.
2. Fasten the side pieces together, with two nails, and make the construction with the square, compasses, and metre-measure.
3. Cut off the lower end at right angles with the tenon-saw, and square with the smoothing-plane.
4. Cut out the shape with the turn-saw, firmer-chisel, spokeshave, knife, file, and scraper.
5. Take the side pieces apart.
6. Set out the grooves in the side pieces for the insertion of the shelves with the compasses, square, bevel, and cutting-gauge, and cut them out with the knife, dovetail-saw, and firmer-chisel.
7. Set out the length of the shelves and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw; square the ends in the shooting-board with the trying-plane.

8. Make the notch at the ends of the shelves with the cutting-gauge and the dovetail-saw ; round the front edge with the smoothing-plane ; fit into the grooves with the firmer-chisel.
9. Put the parts together at right angles and glue.
10. Smooth the sides and the back edge with the smoothing-plane.
11. Smooth the model with the smoothing-plane and file, and finish with the scraper.

No. 48.—HOOPED BUCKET (Pine).

Metric—Height 20 cm. Diameter 21 cm.

English—8 in. by 9 in.

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Plane the edges of the staves true with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Set out the curves at both ends of the staves according to the model ; then work the concave surface of the inner side of the staves with the Swedish jack-plane and round plane.
4. Set out the thickness of the staves with the marking-gauge ; then dress down the outer surface with the axe, and finish with jack-plane and smoothing-plane.
5. Face and edge the piece for the bottom with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge ; construct the shape with the compasses, and cut out with the turn-saw and the spokeshave ; set out the inclination of the edge with the bevel.
6. Set out the groove, according to the thickness of the bottom, with the marking-point, bevel, and marking-gauge, and cut it out with the knife and firmer-chisel.
7. Set out the position of the holes for the pins which hold the staves together, with the square and marking-gauge ; bore the holes with the brad-awl.
8. Put the parts together, and smooth on the outside with the smoothing-plane.
9. Put on the hoops, using the punch and the cold-chisel.
10. Set out the distance between the bottom and the lower ends of the staves with the compasses ; cut off with the tenon-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane and spokeshave.

11. Set out the height with the metre-measure, cut off with the tenon-saw, and smooth with the smoothing-plane and spokeshave.
12. Construct the shape of the under ends of the staves with the compasses ; cut out with the turn-saw and knife, and smooth with the file.
13. Smooth the inside of the model with the spoon-iron and file, and finish with the scraper.

No. 49.—CABINET (Pine).

Metric—Length 66 cm. Breadth 40 cm.

English—26 in. by 16½ in. by 10½ in.

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Face the pieces intended for plain jointing with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; then plain joint with the jack-plane and trying-plane, and glue.
3. Face and edge the top moulds and the lists with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
4. Set out the bevelled edges of the lists with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
5. Face and edge the pieces for the sides, bottom, back, panels, and shelves with the trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
6. Set out the length of the parts to be dovetailed, and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw ; square the ends with the smoothing-plane.
7. Dove-tail according to the model. For directions see No. 33.
8. Fit the parts together ; level the back edges of the carcase with the trying-plane, then take the pieces apart.
9. Set out the groove into which the back slides with the cutting-gauge, and cut it out with the knife and firmer-chisel (or the plough).
10. Glue the carcase together.
11. Cut off the piece for the back at right angles with the tenon-saw, and fit it into the groove with the smoothing-plane and trying-plane ; then nail it at the bottom.
12. Smooth the outer sides of the carcase, and the front edge with the trying-plane and smoothing-plane.

13. Fit the lists and mouldings together, using the square, set bevel, dovetail-saw, smoothing-plane, and firmer-chisel, and nail them on.
14. Set out the pieces for the door, according to the model, with the square and marking-gauge.
15. Cut out the mortise-holes with the mortise-chisel, and cut the tenons to fit the holes with the tenon-saw and firmer-chisel.
16. Fit the door-frame together, using the firmer-chisel. Smooth the outside with the trying-plane.
17. Set out the groove for the panel with the cutting-gauge, and cut it out with the knife and firmer-chisel.
18. Fit the panel into the groove with the trying-plane and smoothing-plane.
19. Put the parts together, and glue.
20. Smooth the frame-pieces for the door on both sides, and fit it into its place with the trying-plane and smoothing-plane.
21. Sink the hinges and fit the lock with the square, marking-gauge, pin-bit, firmer-chisel, and screwdriver.
22. Smooth the upper and under surfaces with the smoothing-plane, and finish the whole article with the scraper.

No. 50.—SMALL TABLE (Pine).

Metric—Height 76·5 cm. Breadth 34 cm.

English—30 in. by 13½ in.

1. Saw out suitable pieces with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge the legs with the jack-plane and trying-plane; set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
3. Face and edge the pieces for the rails with the jack-plane and trying-plane; set out the breadth and thickness with the marking-gauge.
4. Fix the pieces for the rails into the bench; set out the length with the metre-measure; set out the tenons according to the model with the square and marking-gauge, and cut them with the tenon-saw and firmer-chisel.
5. Fix the legs into the bench; set out the mortise-holes, according to the tenons, with the square and marking-gauge.
6. Cut out the mortises with the mortise-chisel and mallet.

7. Set out the shape of the legs with the square, compasses, and marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out the bevel with the marking-gauge, and make it with the firmer-chisel and file.
8. Fit the tenons into the mortises with the firmer-chisel.
9. Smooth the inside of the legs with the smoothing-plane.
10. Set out the block-mortise in the rails with the compasses, square, and marking-gauge, and cut out with the firmer-chisel.
11. Glue the parts together.
12. Plain joint, and glue the pieces for the top and the shelf.
13. Cut off the legs at the upper end with the tenon-saw to the right length, at right angles to the rails, then level with the smoothing-plane ; smooth the upper edges of the rails with the smoothing-plane.
14. Smooth the outer sides with the smoothing-plane.
15. Face and edge the top and the shelf with the jack-plane and the trying-plane ; set out the breadth with the metre-measure, and the thickness with the marking-gauge.
16. Fit in the shelf, using the square, marking-gauge, dove-tail saw, and firmer-chisel.
17. Plane up the blocks to the required breadth and thickness with the jack-plane and trying-plane ; set out their length with the compasses, cut off with the dove-tail saw, and smooth with the firmer-chisel.
18. Hold the shelf close to the bottom rails with the hand-screw ; glue the blocks to the shelf and the rails.
19. Set out the shape of the top with the square and compasses, and cut it out with the firmer-chisel, smoothing-plane, and file.
20. Plane up the blocks for the mortises, and fit them in with the dove-tail saw and firmer-chisel ; set out their length with the compasses, and cut off at right angles with the dove-tail saw and firmer-chisel.
21. Hold the top in position with the hand-screw ; glue the blocks, and place them in position.
22. Smooth the edges of the top and the shelf with the smoothing-plane and file.
23. Finish with the scraper.

APPENDIX.

As is well known to all students of the principles of educational Slöjd, the “*models*” are merely the means by which the pupil is made to produce a useful article at the same time that he practises the “*exercises.*” Hence, the more nearly the articles made conform to the national usage and personal requirements of those who make them, the more nearly do they fulfil their intention. Hence also, the more readily the English Slöjd-teacher can discover a substitute for any model included in the High School series, which does not exactly meet the requirements of English people, the more closely will he approximate to the ideal Slöjd-teacher.

What follows may suggest further modifications to the minds of English teachers.

ALTERNATIVES TO SOME OF THE MODELS IN THE HIGH SCHOOL SERIES.

No. 9—page 11. As an alternative to this model, the pupil may make the Dibble, the ninth model in the Secondary School series. Children who are fond of gardening like it.

DIBBLE—(Pine).

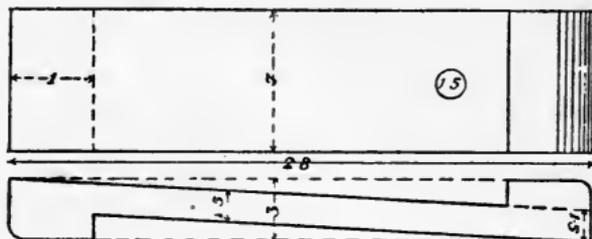
Metric—Length 30 cm. Thickness 2.5 cm.

English—12 in. by 1 in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece with the hand-saw.
2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off.
3. Draw diagonals to find the middle point at each end, and describe round it a circle, the diameter of which is equal to the prescribed thickness of the model.
4. Bevel the edges with the jack-plane and the trying-plane to make the article octagonal.

5. Make it cylindrical with the smoothing-plane.
6. Make the pointed end with the knife.
7. Set out the length, and cut off with the tenon-saw.
8. Round the upper end with the knife.
9. Finish with the file and sandpaper.

No. 12—page 13. As an alternative, the Bench Hook may be made.



BENCH HOOK (Beech).

Metric—Length 28 cm. Width 7 cm.

English—11 in. by 2½ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece of wood, 32 cm. long, 9 cm. wide, and 4 cm. thick, with hand-saw.
2. Plane up face side and face edge at right angles.
3. Gauge to thickness and width, and plane off.
4. Set out the hook on each side, as shewn in diagram.
5. Saw out with the hand-saw, and plane true with jack-plane and smoothing-plane, paring out the corners with knife and chisel.
6. Saw to right length with tenon-saw, and shoot the ends in the shooting-board.
7. Round off the ends of the stops with the chisel and knife, and finish with file and scraper.
8. Bore the hole for hanging with the brace and 1.5 centre-bit (from each side).

No. 15—page 14. As an alternative, or as an opportunity for extra practice, the Spoon, which is the fifteenth model in the Elementary School series, may be made

SPOON (Birch).

Metric—Length 21.5 cm. Breadth 5.2 cm.

English—8½ in. by 2½ in.

- 1 Saw off a suitable piece with the hand-saw, and trim with the axe to the approximate breadth and thickness.
- 2 Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane, and gauge up 5 cm. broader than actual size and plane off.
- 3 Set out the side elevation of the spoon as shown in Construction Sheet No. 15, Pl. 5. Saw out the upper side with the hand and bow-saw, and pare to lines with firmer-chisel and gouge, finishing with the file.
- 4 On the upper prepared surface, draw the plan of the handle and the ellipse of the bowl, as shown in Construction Sheet No. 15, Pl. 5.
- 5 At the shoulders of the spoon bore two holes with the 2.9 centre-bit, then saw out shape with the bow-saw, pare the edges with the chisel and gouge, and finish with the file.
- 6 Hollow out the bowl with a large gouge and the spoon-iron. Scrape with the convex shell scraper, and sandpaper.
- 7 Draw the under curve and saw out with the bow-saw.
- 8 Model to right shape with the knife and spoke-shave, and finish with the file, scraper, and sandpaper.

No. 16—page 15. This model, in the Swedish series, is only 45 cm. long, is called a “cutting board,” and is used in cutting slices of bread from the small round loaves used in Sweden. By making it 60 cm. long, the pupil can make it the shape of an English knife-board, but one side would require to be coated with leather, or some other material, to make it really useful.

Nos. 22 and 27—pages 19, 23, form together a very efficient contrivance for pressing flowers, but not of a kind with which English people are familiar. As a substitute for No. 22, a thoroughly useful and English model, “a towel-roller and rests” has been suggested; but this model, though complete in itself, does not furnish practice in all the exercises included in the flower-press as a whole. The pupil who chooses the towel-roller should therefore also make the “lid,” the twenty-fourth model of the Elementary School series.

TOWEL-ROLLER and RESTS (Birch).

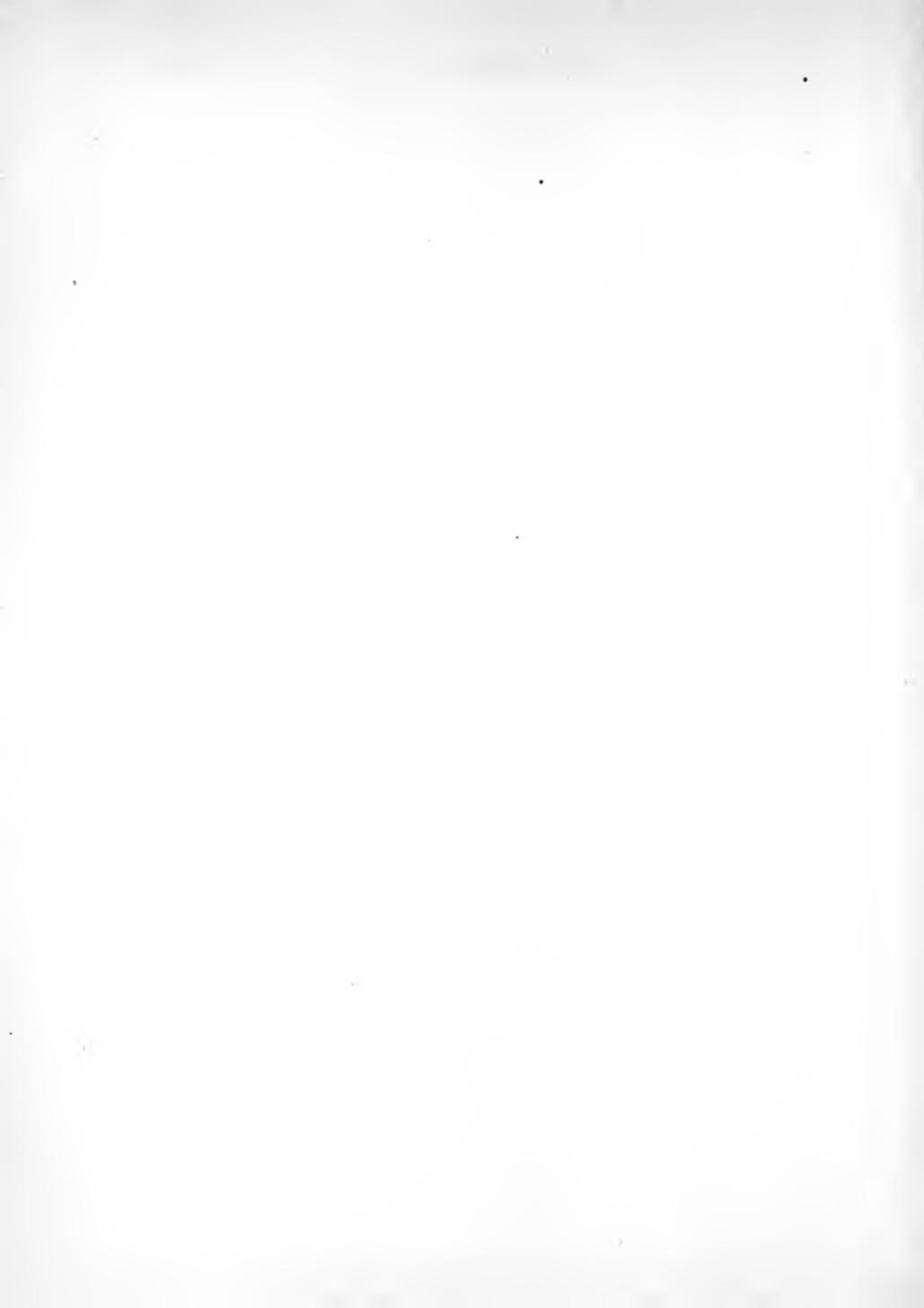
Metric—Length 43 cm. Thickness 4.5.

English—17 in. by 1 $\frac{7}{8}$ in.

1. Saw out a suitable piece for the roller with the hand-saw.
 2. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane, set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Set out the length with the metre-measure, and cut off at right angles with the tenon-saw.
 4. Draw diagonals at each end to find the centre-point, and describe a circle, the circumference of which is equal to the thickness required for the roller, and bore the holes for the pegs or dowels with the centre-bit.
 5. With the planes make the roller first octagonal, then sixteen-sided, and finally round.
 6. Make the pegs for the ends in the same manner, glue them in, then cut off to the required length with the tenon-saw.
 7. Finish with file and scraper.
 8. Saw out sufficient material for both rests in one piece with the hand-saw.
 9. Face and edge with the jack-plane and trying-plane, set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 10. Draw the construction on both sides of the wood, using the square and compasses.
- [Though there is no construction at present specially devised for the rests of the towel-roller, the teacher or student will easily see by comparing the construction for the rests of the flower-press with the rests of the towel-roller, how to modify the former for the construction of the latter.]
11. Make the holes with the centre-bit, cut out with the turn-saw, gouge, firmer-chisel, and file.
 12. Drill holes for the screws.
 13. Finish with scraper.

L I D (P i n e).*Metric—Diameter 34 cm.**English — 13½ in. by ¾ in.*

1. Saw out the material with the hand-saw.
 2. Plane one side of each piece with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 3. Plain joint the edges which are to be glued with the trying-plane, glue, and cramp up in the bench.
 4. Make the surface quite level with the trying-plane.
 5. Set out the circular shape with the compasses.
 6. Set out the groove for the clamp with the square, compasses, metre-measure, marking-point, set-bevel, and marking-gauge. Cut it out with the knife, groove-saw, firmer-chisel, and old woman's tooth.
 7. Plane up the clamp, and fit it into the groove with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 8. Set out the thickness with the marking-gauge, and plane off with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 9. Saw out the circle with the broad bow-saw. Smooth and shape the edges with the spokeshave and file.
 10. Smooth off with the smoothing-plane.
 11. Saw out material for the handle with the hand-saw, and plane to the required breadth and thickness with the jack-plane and trying-plane.
 12. Make the construction with the square and compasses.
 13. Cut out with the turn-saw, firmer-chisel, smoothing-plane, knife, file, and scraper.
 14. Bore the holes for the screws with the centre-bit.
 15. Screw the handle on to the lid, using the screwdriver.
-



Lists of Tools required for different numbers of Pupils.

A. List of Tools required for one pupil.

1 Shooting-board.	1 Hand-saw.	1 Half-round file.
2 Handscrews.	1 Tenon-saw.	1 Round file.
1 Metre-measure or Rule.	1 Compass-saw.	1 Scraper.
1 Marking-point.	1 Groove-saw.	1 Brace, with set of bits.
1 Marking-gauge.	1 Axe.	1 Bradawl.
1 Cutting-gauge.	1 Knife.	1 Mallet.
1 pair of Compasses.	1 Draw-knife.	1 Hammer.
1 Square.	$\frac{1}{2}$ set (6) Firmer-Chisels.	1 pair of Pincers.
1 Bevel.	2 Mortise Chisels.	1 Wire-cutter.
1 Saw-set.	$\frac{1}{2}$ set (6) Gouges.	1 pair flat-jawed Pliers.
1 Saw-sharpening clamps.	1 Spoon-iron.	1 pair round-jawed Pliers.
1 Triangular file.	1 Jack-plane.	1 Screwdriver.
1 Bow-saw.	1 Trying-plane.	1 Glue-pot and Brush.
1 Dove-tail saw.	1 Smoothing-plane.	1 Grindstone.
1 Turn-saw (broad-webbed).	1 Compass-plane.	1 Oilstone.
1 Turn-saw (narrower webbed).	1 Old woman's tooth-plane.	1 Oil-can.
	1 Spokeshave.	Sandpaper.
	1 Flat file.	

B. Minimum number of Tools required for the simultaneous instruction of 6 to 8 pupils.

1 Shooting-board.	2 Marking-points.	1 Bevel.
2 Handscrews.	3 to 4 Marking-gauges.*	1 Saw-set.
6 to 8 Metre-measures or Rules.	3 pair Compasses.	1 Saw-sharpening clamps.
	3 to 4 Squares.*	

[* With regard to the minimum number of tools required, the reader is referred to Chapter I., p. 24, and is strongly recommended to provide each child, if possible, with a complete *bench set*, viz :—knife, jack-plane, trying-plane, smoothing-plane, square, marking-gauge, compass, rule or metre-measure, and scraper.—Trs.]

2 Triangular files.	½ set (4) Mortise Chisels.	1 Brace, with set of bits.
2 Bow-saws.		1 Bradawl.
1 Dove-tail saw.	½ set (6) Gouges.	3 Mallets.
1 Turn-saw (broad-webbed).	3 Spoon-irons.	2 Hammers.*
2 Turn-saws (narrower webbed).	2 Jack-planes.*	1 pair Pincers.
1 Hand-saw.	3 Trying-planes.*	1 Wire-cutter.
1 Tenon-saw.	3 Smoothing-planes.*	1 pair flat Pliers.
1 Compass-saw.	1 Compass-plane.	1 pair round Pliers.
1 Groove-saw.	1 Old woman's tooth-plane.	2 Screwdrivers.
1 Axe.	2 Spokeshaves.	1 Glue-pot and Brush.
6 to 8 Knives.	1 Flat file.	1 Grindstone.
1 Draw-knife.	2 Half-round files.	2 Oilstones.
1 set (12) Firmer Chisels.	1 Round file.	1 Oil-can.
	3 Scrapers.*	Sandpaper.

C. Minimum number of Tools required for the simultaneous instruction of 12 pupils.

2 Shooting-boards.	1 Hand-saw.	2 Round files.
3 Handscrews.	1 Tenon-saw.	6 Scrapers.*
12 Metre-measures or Rules.	1 Compass-saw.	1 Brace, with set of bits.
4 Marking-points.	1 Groove-saw.	2 Bradawls.
8 Marking-gauges.*	1 Axe.	4 Mallets.
2 Cutting-gauges.	12 Knives.	3 Hammers.*
6 pair of Compasses.	1 Draw-knife.	1 pair of Pincers.
8 Squares.*	1 set (12) Firmer Chisels.	1 Wire-cutter.
2 Bevels.	½ set (4) Mortise Chisels.	1 pair flat Pliers.
2 Saw-sets.	½ set (6) Gouges.	1 pair round Pliers.
2 Saw-sharpening clamps.	3 Spoon-irons.	6 Screwdrivers.
4 Triangular files.	4 Jack-planes.*	1 Glue-pot with Brush.
3 Bow-saws.	8 Trying-planes.*	1 Grindstone.
2 Dove-tail saws.	8 Smoothing-planes.*	2 Oilstones.
2 Turn-saws (broad-webbed).	1 Compass-plane.	1 Oil-can.
2 Turn-saws (narrower webbed).	4 Spokeshaves.	Sandpaper.
	1 Flat file.	
	3 Half-round files.	

* See note, page 251.

D. Complete list of Tools required for the simultaneous instruction of 12 pupils.

3 Shooting-boards.	3 Hand-saws (tenon-saws).	4 Flat files.
4 Handscrews.	1 Groove-saw.	6 Half-round files.
12 Metre-measures.	2 Axes.	4 Round files.
8 Marking-points.	12 Knives.	6 Scrapers.
12 Marking-gauges.	2 Draw-knives.	1 Brace with set of bits.
2 Cutting-gauges.	2 sets (24) Firmer Chisels.	3 Bradawls.
6 pair of Compasses.	1 set (8) Mortise Chisels.	8 Mallets.
12 Squares.	1 set (12) Gouges.	12 Hammers.
2 Bevels.	6 Spoon-irons.	2 pair of Pincers.
2 Saw-sets.	12 Jack-planes.	1 Wire-cutter.
2 Saw-sharpening clamps.	12 Trying-planes.	1 pair flat Pliers.
4 Triangular files.	12 Smoothing-planes.	1 pair round Pliers.
4 Bow-saws.	1 Compass-plane.	6 Screwdrivers.
3 Dove-tail saws.	1 Old woman's tooth-plane.	1 Glue-pot with Brush.
4 Turn-saws (broad-webbed).	6 Spokeshaves.	1 Grindstone.
4 Turn-saws (narrower webbed).		3 Oilstones.
		1 Oil-can.
		Sandpaper.

The cost of providing the above tools, calculated according to the prices* now current (in Sweden), is as follows:—

List (A)	about	50	Kronor.†
.. (B)	..	85	..
.. (C)	..	135	..
.. (D)	..	205	..

The number of benches required is as follows:—

For List (A)	1
.. .. (B)	3 or 4
.. .. (C)	8
.. .. (D)	12

If double benches are used, only half the number will be required in the cases of (B), (C), and (D) respectively. As double benches are cheaper in proportion to single benches, they may in some cases be preferred to single ones.

Tools of the best quality should always be procured; they are the cheapest in the long-run.

It is also desirable that drawings and constructions of the models should be procured.

In connection with this, it may be mentioned that the annual cost of timber and other materials in a small country school in Sweden, where 10 to 15 children receive instruction, is from 10 to 20 kronor, exclusive of the outlay of replacing worn-out tools.

The same materials for a class of 16 boys in England would cost about £1 10s. annually. Red deal pine is the best soft-wood for Slöjd, and can be obtained at any good timber yard. Lime-tree, sycamore, and chestnut all make good substitutes for birch. The two former are very fine in the grain, and are good for scoops, bowls, etc. They are a little dearer than birch. American canary wood can also be recommended as a wood suitable for flat articles; it is a little harder than deal, and works easily. This wood can be obtained anywhere, and is not dear.

* The English prices for the tools are given on pages 267-270.

† The Swedish krona is worth 1s. 1½d. Eighteen kronor = £1.

INDEX.

A

- Absolute weight of timber, 51.
- Accuracy, habits of, 2, 14, 15.
- Adjustable bench, 65.
 - " bit, 112.
 - " handscrew, 69.
 - " planes, 102.
- Age of the Slöjd-pupil, 17.
 - " of trees, 30.
- Aim of Slöjd, 2.
- Air-tubes, 31, 32.
- Albuminoids in sap, 34.
- Albumum, 32.
- Alder, the, 32, 35, 38, 39, 46, 48, 50, 52, 53; the hoary-leaved, 53.
- Alternatives to some of the Models, 245-249.
- American Axe-handle, 231.
- American Canary-wood, 254.
- Angle formed by the bevelled edge and front face of the plane-iron, 95; by the bevelled edges of the axe, 88; by the face and front side of chisels, 90, 91; by the faces of the Slöjd-knife, 88.
- Annual layers, concentric, 29-31.
- Apple, the, 38, 47, 50, 56.
- Area of Slöjd-room, 20.
- Articles of luxury, 12.
- Articles, modelled, 12
 - " rectangular, 12.
 - " rejected, 15.
 - " sale of, 26.
- Artificial light in Slöjd-room, 21.
- Artisan, work of the, 1.
- Ash, the, 31, 32, 35, 38, 39, 46-48, 53.
- Aspen, the, 35, 46, 48, 50, 54.

- Attachments of saw-blade, 82-84.
- Attention, habits of, 2.
- Auger-bit, the, 110.
- Autumn wood, 30-32.
- Axe, the, 7, 22, 47, 59, 60, 87, 88.
- Axe-handle, American, 231.
- Axle-fitting, 164.

B

- Back bench-vice, the, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66.
- Bark, 28.
- Bast, 28.
- Beam-compasses, 73, 74.
- Beech, the, 33-35, 38, 39, 42, 44, 46-48, 50-52, 55, 198.
- Bench, the, 62-67.
 - " adjustable, 65.
 - " double, 65.
 - " Naas pattern, 64, 65.
 - " Philips' Registered, 66.
 - " single, 62-64.
 - " Trainor's, 66, 67.
- Bench drawer, the, 62, 64.
- Bench-hook, 246.
- Bench-pegs, 62, 63, 66.
- Bench-rails, 62, 64, 66.
- Bench-top, 62, 64-66.
- Bench-well, 62, 64, 66.
- Bench-set, the, 24, 251, footnote.
- Benches required, number of, 254.
- Bench-vice, back, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66.
 - " front, 62, 63, 66.
- Bevel-cut, 128.
- Bevel, mitre, 76.
 - " set, 76.
 - " wooden, 76.
- Bevelled edge-planing, 150.
- Bevelling, 138.
 - " with draw-knife, 152.

- Birch, the, 32, 38, 39, 42, 44, 46-48,
50-52, 54, 196-198.
Birch, figured, 46.
Bits, 108-112.
Blade of a saw, 77, 80.
Blocking, 180.
 " mortised, 182.
Blocks, for table tops, 43.
"Blue surface," 40, 43, 44.
Bodily labour, 2, 8.
Body, position of, during work, 21-24,
127, 129, 135, 139, 147.
 Plates I.—VIII., 184-191.
Bolts, 62, 65.
Book-carrier, 224.
Book-shelves, 240.
Boot-jack, 227.
Boring, with bradawl, 150.
 " with centre-bit, 136.
 " with quill-bit, 134.
Boss of a plane, 96, 98.
Bow-compasses, 73.
Bow-saw, the, 83.
 " broad-webbed, 83, 85.
Bowl for writing table, 218.
Box, 225.
Brace, the, 108, 109.
 " American, 109.
 " Swedish, 109.
Bracket, 236.
Bradawl, the, 112.
 " boring with, 150.
Broad-leaved trees, 30, 31, 33, 52.
Brushes for glue, 120.
Bucket, hooped, 241.
- C**
- Cabinet, 242.
Caliper-compasses, 74.
Cambium, 28.
Camphor, solution of, 45.
Camphor-tree, 49.
Canary-wood, American, 254.
"Captain" of Slöjd-class, 25.
Carpentry, 7, 8.
 " Slöjd, 6, 7, 21.
Carving-tools, 89, 92, 93.
Carving wood, 8.
Cedar, the, 49.
Cells, wood, 28.
Cellulose, 29.
Centre-bit, the, 22, 110, 111.
 " boring with, 136.
 " sharpening the, 111.
Chamfering, 156.
Changes which wood undergoes, 35.
Chestnut, the, 52, 55, 254.
Chisel, the, 7, 89-91.
 " bent, 93.
 " firmer, 90.
 " mortise, 91.
Chiselling, concave, 144.
Chiselling, oblique, 144.
 " perpendicular, 142.
Chopping, 144. Plate VII.
Chopping-block, 88.
Circular sawing, 156.
Clamping, dove-tail, 154.
Clamps, 43.
 " saw-sharpening, 79.
Class-teaching, 16, 17.
Cleavage of wood, 34.
Cloak-suspender, 223.
Clothes-rack, 221.
Colour of wood, 48, 49.
Colouring matter, 34.
Common dove-tailing, 160.
 " mortise and tenon, 170.
Compasses, 24, 73, 74.
 " beam, 73, 74.
 " bow, 73.
 " caliper, 74.
Compass-plane, the, 102.
 " saw, 80, 86, 166.
Concave chiselling, 144.
 " cut, 138.
 " modelling with the plane, 178.
Concealed tenoning, 180.

Concentric annual layers, 29-31.
 Constituents of sap, 34, 35.
 Constructions, geometrical, 13, 254.
 Convex cut, 128.
 „ modelling with plane, 140.
 „ sawing, 138.
 Corky layer, the, 28.
 Cost of providing tools, 254.
 „ „ timber, &c., 254.
 Counter-sink drill, the, 110, 112.
 Cover of the plane, 95, 96.
 Cracking of timber, 36, 39, 40-43.
 Cramp, thumb-screw, 70.
 Crayon-holder, 216.
 Cross-cut, the, 126.
 “Cross-grained” wood, 46.
 Cross-section of stem, 27, 28.
 Cut, bevel, 128.
 „ concave, 138.
 „ convex, 128.
 „ cross, 126.
 „ long, 126.
 Cut, oblique, 128.
 „ plane surface, 140.
 Cutting-gauge, the, 73.

D

Day-book, teacher's, 26.
 Deal, red, 254.
 Decay of timber, 43.
 Dexterity, technical, 3-5.
 Dibble, 245.
 Dove-tail clamping, 154.
 „ filletster, 103.
 „ saw, 86.
 Dove-tailing, 15, 73, 125.
 „ common, 160.
 „ half-lap, 172.
 „ in thick wood, 168.
 „ notched, 176.
 „ oblique, 174.
 „ single, at right angles, 158.
 Dowels, 124.
 Drawing-board, 234.

Drawings, 13, 254.
 Drawings in perspective, 13.
 Draw-knife, the, 7, 89.
 „ bevelling with, 152.
 „ modelling with, 156.
 Dressing up with the smoothing-plane, 146; with spokeshave, 146.
 “Dry-rot,” 44.
 Durability of timber, 45, 51.
 Duramen, 32.

E

Ebony, 32, 47, 50, 57.
 Edge-grooving, half concealed, 176;
 oblique, 166.
 Edge-planing, 130.
 „ bevelled, 150.
 Edges, straight, 76, 77.
 Educational and practical Slöjd, 1.
 Educational Slöjd, aim of, 2.
 Elasticity of timber, 48.
 Elder, the, 33.
 Elm, the, 31, 32, 35, 38, 39, 44, 46-48,
 50, 51, 53.
 End-squaring, 148.
 English handscrew, 69.
 „ marking-gauge, 72.
 Exercises, the, 6, 10, 11, 60, 126-183,
 196-199, 209-213.
 Expansion-bit, the, 111, 112.
 Eye of the axehead, 88.

F

Face of chisel, 90.
 Face-planing, 77, 136.
 Fermentation of sap, 43.
 Fibres of wood, 29.
 File, the, 22, 80, 105, 106.
 „ to clean, 106.
 „ to use, 106.
 „ triangular, 80.
 File-grade, the, 105.
 Filing, 136.
 Filletster, the dove-tail, 103.

"Finer" kinds of manual work, 8.
 Fir, the, 32, 34, 35, 38, 39, 46, 48, 50,
 51, 52, 196.
 Firmer, the, 93.
 " the corner, 93.
 Firmer-chisel, the, 90.
 Fitting in pegs, 148.
 Fixing hinges, 172.
 Fixing with wooden pegs, 158.
 Fixing with screws, 156.
 Flat ruler, 227.
 Flower-pot cross, 220.
 " stand, 222.
 " stick, 215.
 Flower-press, 226.
 Flower-stick, 215.
 Fluting, 170.
 Foot-stool, 223.
 Frame-saw, the, 78, 82.
 Fungi, 44.

G

Gauge, cutting, 73.
 " marking, 24, 71, 72, 236.
 Gauging, 134.
 Gee Cramp, the, 70.
 Geometrical constructions, 13, 254.
 Glue, 21, 119-123.
 " liquid, 120.
 Glue-brushes, 120.
 " pot, 120.
 Glueing, 121-123, 150.
 " with aid of handscrew, 166.
 Gouge, the, 89, 91.
 " hollowing out with, 162.
 " scooping out with, 162.
 " curved, 93.
 " front bent, 93.
 " parting, 93.
 " spoon, 92.
 " straight, 93.
 Gouging, oblique, 154.
 " perpendicular, 152.

Gouging with gouge and spoon-iron,
 144.
 Grain, against the, 49.
 " endway of the, 49.
 " lengthway of the, 49.
 " with the, 49.
 " the silver, 33.
 Graving with V tool or parting-tool,
 170.
 Grinding tools, 88, 115.
 Grinding-rest, 116.
 Grinding-support, 116.
 Grindstone, the, 115, 116.
 Groove-jointing, 125.
 Groove-saw, 86, 87.
 Grooving, 73, 87, 166.
 Gymnastics, 18, 21, 22.

H

Habits of accuracy, 2, 14, 15.
 " attention, 2.
 " industry, 2.
 " order, 2.
 " self-reliance, 2, 14.
 Half-concealed edge-grooving, 176.
 Half-lap dove-tailing, 172.
 Half-lapping, 170.
 Halving, 125.
 " with knife, 148.
 Hammer, the, 113.
 " the set, 179.
 Hammer-handle, 219.
 Hand, use of the right and left, 22.
 Handle of a saw, 83.
 Hand-saw, the, 85.
 Handscrew, the, 68, 69.
 " adjustable, 69.
 " English, 69.
 " iron, 70.
 " wooden, 68.
 " glueing with, 166.
 Hard wood, work in, 148.
 Hardness of timber, 46-48.

- Harmonious Physical development, 21, 22.
 Hazel, the, 48.
 Heart-wood, the, 32, 47.
 Height of Slöjd-room, 20.
 High School series of models, 196.
 Hinges, fixing, 172.
 Hinge-plates, 112.
 Hinge-sinking, 172.
 Hold-fast, the, 67.
 Hole-rimer drill, 110, 112.
 Hollow, the, 102.
 Hollowing out with gouge, 162.
 " with plane, 178.
 Hooped bucket, 241.
 Hooping, 125, 178.
 Hoops for barrels, 89, 178.
 Horn of the plane, 94, 99.
 Hornbeam, the, 32, 35, 38, 39, 46-48, 50, 52.
 Housing, 164.
- I**
- Impregnation of timber, 42, 45.
 Individual instruction, 16.
 Industry, habits of, 2.
 Insects, attacks of, 44, 45.
 Instruction, individual, 16.
 " intuitional, 13.
 " time given to, 18.
 Intuitional instruction, 13.
 Iron handscrew, the, 70.
 " plane, the, 100, 101.
- J**
- Jack-plane, the, 24, 98, 99.
 Jointing, 119, 125.
 " plain, 96, 152.
 Juniper, the, 48-50, 52.
- K**
- Key of bench, 63.
 Key-hole saw, the, 166.
 Key-label, 216.
 Knife, the, 7, 22, 24, 88, 89.
 Knife-board, 220.
 Knife-box, 230.
- L**
- Labour, bodily, 2, 8.
 Ladle, 225.
 Lamp-stand, wall, 228.
 Larch, the, 32, 38, 39, 48, 50-52.
 Letter-opener, 215.
 Lid, 248.
 Light in Slöjd-room, artificial, 21.
 Lignum vitæ, 47, 50, 57.
 Lime, the, 35, 38, 39, 46-48, 50, 254.
 Liquid glue, 120.
 Lock-fitting, 174.
 Long-cut, 126.
 Long oblique planing, 164.
 Long-sawing, 130.
 Luxury, articles of, 12.
- M**
- Mahogany, 38, 39, 49, 50, 57.
 Mallet, the, 113.
 Maple, the, 33, 35, 38, 39, 46-48, 50, 56.
 Marker, the, 71, 72.
 Marking-gauge, the, 24, 71, 72, 236.
 " English, 72.
 " Johansson's, 72.
 " Lundmark's, 71.
 Marking-point, the, 71.
 Match-box, 231.
 Measurements, 70, 71.
 Medulla, the, 28.
 Medullary rays, the, 28, 33.
 Metal plates, &c., sinking and fixing, 150.
 Method, 9.
 Metre-measure, the, 13, 24, 70, 71, 220.
 Mitre-bevel, the, 76.
 Mitreing, 125, 168.
 Mitre-shooting, 68.

Modelled articles, 12.
 Modelling, convex, 140.
 Modelling with the draw-knife, 156 ;
 with the plane, 140, 178 ; with
 the spokeshave, 146.
 Models, the, 11-14, 196 ; rejected, 15.
 Monitor of Slöjd-class, the, 25.
 Mortise and tenon, common, 170.
 Mortise and tenon-jointing, 125.
 Mortise-chisel, the, 91.
 Mortised blocking, 182.
 Muriatic acid, 45.

N

Naas Slöjd diagrams, 13 (footnote).
 Nailing, 123, 150.
 Nails, beat, 123.
 " cut, 123.
 Needle-leaved trees, 30-32, 34, 40, 44,
 49, 52.
 Notched dove-tailing, 176.

O

Oak, the, 31-35, 38, 39, 46-52, 55, 198.
 Oblique chiselling, 144.
 " cut, 128.
 " dove-tailing, 174.
 " edge-grooving, 166.
 " gouging, 154.
 " paring, 144.
 " planing, 146, 164.
 " sawing, 146.
 " slotting, 176.
 Obstacle-planing, 142.
 Oil-paint, 45.
 Oils, volatile, 35.
 Oilstone, the, 117.
 " method of using, 117.
 Oilstone-slip, 118.
 Order, habits of, 2.
 Osier, the, 48.
 Outside-pan of glue-pot, 119, 120.

P

Packthread-winder, 216.
 Panel-grooving, 166.
 Panels of doors, 43.
 Paper-knife, 218.
 Parcel-pin, 214.
 Paring, perpendicular, 142.
 " oblique, 144.
 Parting-gouge, 93.
 Parting-tool, bent, 93.
 " straight, 93.
 Pear, the, 39, 47, 50, 56.
 Pen-box, 233.
 Pen-rest, 217.
 Pen-tray, 219.
 Peg of a saw, 83.
 Pegs, fitting in, 148.
 Pegs, fixing with wooden, 158.
 Perpendicular chiselling, 142.
 " gouging, 152.
 Perpendicular paring, 142.
 Perspective drawings, 13.
 Philips' Registered Bench, 66.
 Physical development, harmonious,
 21, 22.
 Picture-frame, 237.
 Pin-bit, the, 110.
 Pincers, 112, 113.
 Pine, the, 32, 34, 196-199.
 Pins, wooden, 124.
 Pith, the, 28, 30, 33, 41.
 Plain-jointing, 96, 152.
 Plane, the, 22, 61, 93-104.
 " the adjustable, 101.
 " the compass, 102.
 " the hollow, 102.
 " the iron, 100, 101.
 " the jack, 24, 98, 99.
 " the old woman's tooth, 102, 103.
 " the rebate, 101.
 " the round, 101.
 " the smoothing, 24, 60, 96, 100,
 101.

- Plane, the tothing, 123, footnote.
 „ the trying, 24, 60, 96, 99, 100.
 Plane, concave, modelling with, 178 ;
 convex modelling with, 140 ;
 hollowing out with, 178.
 Plane, setting the, 98.
 Plane-cover, the, 95, 96.
 Plane-horn, the, 94, 99.
 Plane-iron, the, 94, 96-98.
 Plane sole, the, 94, 97.
 Plane-stock, the, 94.
 Plane-surface cut, the, 140.
 Planing across the grain, 156.
 „ with round plane, 156.
 „ with shooting board, 162.
 „ bevelled edge, 150.
 „ edge, 130.
 „ face, 77, 136.
 „ long oblique, 164.
 „ oblique, 146, 164.
 „ stop, or obstacle, 142.
 „ wedge, 156.
 Pliers, flat-jawed, 114.
 „ round-jawed, 114.
 Plough, the, 104.
 Plugging, 150.
 Plumbago, 64.
 Pointer, small, 214.
 Poplar, the, 52, 54.
 Pores in wood, the, 31.
 Position of the body during work, 21,
 24, 127, 129, 135, 139, 147.
 Plates I.—VIII., 184-191.
 Preliminary exercises, 11.
 Projections, 13.
 Punch, the, 124.
 Punching, 152.
 Pupils in Slöjd-class, number of, 18.

Q

- Quill-bit, 110.
 „ boring with, 134.

R

- Radial section, 27, 28.
 Rails of the bench, 62, 64, 66.
 Rasps, 106.
 “Raw edge,” 117.
 Razor-strop, 218.
 Rebating, 170.
 Rebate-plane, the, 101.
 Rebates, dove-tail, 104.
 Rectangular articles, 12.
 Red deal, 254.
 Resin, 32, 35, 43, 45.
 Resin-canals, 32.
 Rip-sawing, 130.
 Roller and rests for flower-press, 223.
 Round ruler, 217.
 „ stick, 231.
 Round-plane, planing with, 156.
 Rowan, the, 50, 56.
 Rule, the two-foot, 13, 24, 71.
 Ruler, the, 71 ; flat, 227 ; round, 217.
 Rules for the Slöjd-teacher, 24.

S

- Sand-paper, 25, 107, 108.
 Sale of articles, 26.
 Sap, the, 28, 34.
 „ constituents of, 34, 35.
 „ crude or ascending, 34.
 „ elaborated, 34.
 „ fermentation of, 43.
 „ removal of, 42, 44, 45.
 Sapwood, the, 32, 47.
 Saw, the, 22, 23, 47, 61, 77.
 „ the bow, 83.
 „ the broad-webbed bow, 83, 85
 „ the compass, 80, 86, 166.
 „ the dove-tail, 86.
 „ the frame, 78, 82.
 „ the groove, 86, 87.
 „ the hand, 85.
 „ the tenon, 86.
 „ the turn, 85.

- Saw, the wood, 78, 81.
 Saw, frame of, 60.
 Saw, setting the, 78-81.
 Saw, sharpening the, 80, 81.
 Saw, working the, 84.
 Saw-blade, the, 77, 80.
 Saw-blade, attachments of the, 82-84.
 Saw-cut, width of the, 79.
 Saw-peg, the, 83.
 Saw-set, the, 79, 80.
 Saw-stretcher, 83.
 Saw-sharpening clamps, 79.
 Sawing, circular, 156.
 " convex, 138.
 " long, 130.
 " oblique, 146.
 " rip, 130.
 " up and down, 182.
 " wave, 140.
 Sawing off, 128.
 Sawing with compass-saw, 166.
 " with tenon-saw, 140.
 Scoop, 221.
 Scooping out with gouge, 162.
 Scraper, the, 24, 106, 107.
 Scraping, 107, 142.
 Screw-driver, the, 112, 114.
 Screw-driver bit, the, 110, 112.
 Screwing together, 122, 124, 156.
 Screws, fixing with, 156.
 Screws, wood, 124, 125.
 Seasoning of timber, 40-42, 44.
 Section of stem, cross, 27, 28.
 " radial, 27, 28.
 " tangential, 27, 28.
 Self-reliance, habits of, 2, 14.
 Septa, transverse, 33.
 Set-bevel, the, 76.
 Set-hammer, the, 179.
 Set-square, 232.
 Setting out, 70, 164.
 Setting the plane, 98.
 Setting the saw, 78-81.
 Setting-tongs, 80.
 Sharp tools, 24, 25, 61, 115.
 Sharpening the centre-bit, 111.
 " the saw, 80, 81.
 " tools, 88, 115.
 Shooting-board, the, 67, 68.
 Shoulder of chisel, 90.
 Shrinkage of timber, 36-39, 45.
 Shuttle, 229.
 Silver grain, the, 33.
 Single dove-tailing at right angles, 158.
 Sinking and fixing metal plates, &c., 150.
 Situation of Slöjd-room, 20.
 Size of tools, 59, 60.
 Slöjd, aim of, 2.
 " educational, 1.
 Slöjd and gymnastics, 21.
 Slöjd-carpentry, 6, 7, 21.
 Slöjd-diagrams, Nääs, 13 (footnote).
 Slöjd knife, 88, 89.
 Slöjd-room, 18-21. Plate IX., 192.
 Slotting, 125, 168.
 " oblique, 176.
 Small table, 243.
 Smoothing up, 146.
 Smoothing with the spokeshave, 146.
 Smoothing-plane, the, 24, 60, 96, 100, 101.
 Smoothing-plane, dressing up with the, 146.
 Sole of the plane, 94, 97.
 Specific gravity of timber, 50.
 Spindle of marking-gauge, 71-73.
 Spokeshave, the, 104.
 " modelling with the, 146.
 " smoothing up with the, 146.
 Spoon, 246.
 Spoon-gouge, the, 92.
 Spoon-iron, the, 7, 92.
 Sprigs, 123.
 Spring-wood, 29.

Square, the, 24, 74, 75, 76, 234.
 „ steel, 75.
 „ wooden, 75.
 „ to test the, 75, 76.
 Square-grooving, 164.
 Square-shooting, 162.
 Squaring, 132.
 Stand for tools, 238.
 Starch, 34.
 Staving, 178.
 Steaming, 42, 45.
 Stick, round, 231.
 Stock of marking-gauge, 71, 72.
 „ of plane, 94.
 „ of set bevel, 76.
 „ of square, 75.
 Stool, 233.
 Stop-planing, 142.
 Straight-edges, 76, 77.
 Straight-fibred wood, 29, 46, 94.
 Strength of timber, 45, 46.
 Stretcher of saw, 83.
 String of saw, 83.
 Sugar, 34.
 Support for grinding, 116.
 Support for hand, in jack plane, 99.
 Surface cut, plane, 140.
 Swelling of timber, 36, 39, 45.
 Sycamore, the, 254.

T

Table, small, 243.
 Tang of knife, 88.
 „ of chisel, 90.
 Tangential section of stem, 27, 28.
 Tannic acid, 35, 43, 45.
 Tea-tray, 239.
 Teacher of Slöjd, the, 2-6, 61.
 Technical dexterity, 3-5.
 Teeth of the saw, 77, 78, 81, 84.
 Tenon, common mortise and, 170.
 Tenon saw, the, 86.
 Tenoning, concealed, 180.

Texture of timber, 48.
 Thumb-screw cramp, the, 70.
 Tightener of saw, 83, 84.
 Timber (see also Wood), 27.
 „ absolute weight of, 51.
 „ colour of, 48, 49.
 „ cost of, 254.
 „ decay of, 43.
 „ durability of, 45, 51.
 „ elasticity of, 48.
 „ hardness of, 46-48.
 „ seasoning of, 40-42, 44.
 „ smell of, 48, 49.
 „ Specific gravity of, 50.
 „ strength of, 45, 46.
 „ texture of, 48.
 „ time for cutting down, 40, 44.
 „ toughness of, 48.
 „ warping of, 36, 40-42.
 „ weight of, 50.
 Time given to instruction, 18.
 Tools required for different numbers
 of pupils, 251-253.
 Tools, choice of, 59-61, 254.
 „ cost of providing, 254.
 „ cupboard for, 118. Plate XI.,
 194, 195.
 „ sharp, 24, 25, 61, 115.
 „ sharpening, 88, 115-118.
 „ size of, 59, 60.
 „ stand for, 238.
 „ toy, 59.
 Tool-cupboard, the, 118. Plate XI.
 Tothing plane, the, 123 (footnote).
 Towel-roller and rests, 247.
 Trainor's bench, 66, 67.
 Trammel-heads, 74.
 Transverse septa, 33.
 Trees, broad-leaved, 30, 31, 33, 52.
 „ needle-leaved, 30-32, 34, 40, 44,
 49, 52.
 Trying-plane, the, 24, 60, 96, 99, 100.
 Turning, 8.

Turn-saw, the, 85.
Turpentine, 35.

U

Up-and-down sawing, 182.

V

Varnish, 45.
Vessels, 31, 49.
Vice-tongue, 63.
Volatile oils, 35.
V-tool, 170.

W

Wall lamp-stand, 238.
Walls of the Slöjd-room, 20.
Walnut, the, 38, 39, 42, 47, 50, 56.
Warming the Slöjd-room, 20, 21.
Warping of timber, 36, 40-42.
Water-capacity, 35, 36.
Wave-sawing, 140.
Wedge of the plane, the, 94, 96, 97.
Wedge-planing with smoothing-plane,
156.
Weight of timber, 50.
,, absolute, 51.
White beam, the, 39, 46-48, 56.
Width of saw-cut, 79.

Willow, the, 35.
Winding-laths, 76, 77.
Windows of the Slöjd-room, 20.
Wire-cutter, the, 113.
Wood (see also Timber), 27.
,, autumn, 30-32.
,, colour of, 48, 49.
,, cost of, 254.
,, cross-grained, 46.
,, spring, 29.
,, straight-fibred, 29, 46, 94.
,, work in hard, 148.
Wooden bevel, the, 76.
,, handscrew, the, 68.
Wooden pins, 124.
Wood-carving, 8.
Wood-cells, 28.
Wood-cement, 121. 30
Wood-fibres, 29.
Wood-saw, the, 78, 81.
Wood-screws, 124, 125.
Wood-Slöjd, 6.
Work in hard wood, 148.
Working the saw, 84.

Y

Yew, the, 33.



67
704
C.2

THE LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
Santa Barbara

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW.

MAR 11 '74 2 23

JAN 6 '75 1 21 1

~~FEB 24 '75 2~~ X

UC SOUTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY



A 000 636 393 1

